7. Observation Reporting

Chapter Chair/Editor:	Clement J. McDonald, MD Regenstrief Institute and Indiana University School of Medicine
Chapter Chair/Editor:	Hans Buitendijk Shared Medical Systems
Chapter Editor:	Helen Stevens McKessonHBOC Inc.
Editor: Clinical Trials	Susan Rea Welch M.D. Anderson Cancer Center
Editor: Product Experience	J. Marc Overhage, MD, PhD Regenstrief Institute and Indiana University School of Medicine
Editor: Product Experience	Robert Heiser Eli Lilly and Company
Editor: Waveform Data	Fritz Friedhoff SpaceLabs Medical
Editor: Waveform Data	Ernie Jacobs, MD Cleveland Clinic Foundation
Editor: Waveform Data	Wayne Tracy Health Patterns
Editor: Waveform Data	Terry Lagerlund Mayo Clinic

7.1 CHAPTER 7 CONTENTS

7.1 CHAPTER 7 CONTENTS 7-1

7.2 PURPOSE 7-9

7.2.1 PREFACE (ORGANIZATION OF THIS CHAPTER) 7-11
7.2.2 GLOSSARY 7-11
7.2.2.1 Placer: *7-11*
7.2.2.2 Filler: *7-11*
7.2.2.3 Battery: *7-11*
7.2.2.4 Observation: *7-12*

7.2.2.5 Segment (record): *7-12*
7.2.2.6 Field: *7-12*
7.2.2.7 Repeated value: *7-12*
7.2.2.8 Field components: *7-12*
7.2.3 NARRATIVE REPORTS AS BATTERIES WITH MANY OBX 7-12
7.2.4 SUFFIXES FOR DEFINING OBSERVATION IDS FOR COMMON COMPONENTS OF NARRATIVE REPORTS 7-14
7.2.4.1 Diagnostic impression (IMP) *7-14*
7.2.4.2 Recommendation (REC) *7-15*
7.2.4.3 Confirming procedures (CNP) *7-15*
7.2.4.4 Procedure medication (MED) *7-15*
7.2.4.5 Anatomic site (ANT) *7-15*
7.2.4.6 Device/Instrument (DEV) *7-16*
7.2.4.7 Serial # device/instrument (SER) *7-16*
7.2.4.8 Gross or general description (GDT) *7-16*
7.2.4.9 Microscopic or Secondary description (MDT) *7-16*
7.2.4.10 Technician's comment (TCM) *7-16*
7.2.4.11 Addendum note (ADT) *7-16*
7.2.4.12 Diagnosis (problem) onset date/time (ITM) *7-16*
7.2.4.13 Diagnosis (problem) resolution date/time (RTM) *7-16*
7.2.4.14 Comparison study (CMS) *7-17*
7.2.4.15 Comparison date/time (CMT) *7-17*
7.2.4.16 Comparison results (CMR) *7-17*
7.2.4.17 Comparison change (CMC) *7-17*
7.2.4.18 Predicted value (PRD) *7-17*
7.2.4.19 Percent predicted (PPR) *7-17*
7.2.4.20 After drug observed (AFD) *7-17*
7.2.4.21 Predicted value after drug (ADP) *7-18*
7.2.4.22 Percent predicted after drug (APP) *7-18*
7.2.4.23 Timing information (TIM) *7-18*
7.2.4.24 Channel definition data (CHN) *7-18*
7.2.4.25 Waveform digital data (WAS) *7-18*
7.2.4.26 Waveform annotation (ANO) *7-18*
7.2.4.27 Clinical observation codes *7-18*
7.2.5 CODING SCHEMES 7-18

7.3 TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGE DEFINITIONS 7-19

7.3.1 ORU – UNSOLICITED OBSERVATION MESSAGE (EVENT R01) 7-19
7.3.2 OUL – UNSOLICITED LABORATORY OBSERVATION MESSAGE (R21) 7-20
7.3.3 QRY/ORF - QUERY FOR RESULTS OF OBSERVATION (EVENTS R02, R04) 7-20

7.4 SEGMENTS 7-21

7.4.1 OBR – OBSERVATION REQUEST SEGMENT 7-21
7.4.1.0 OBR field definitions *7-23*
7.4.1.1 OBR-1 Set ID - OBR (SI) 00237 ..... *7-23*
7.4.1.2 OBR-2 Placer order number (EI) 00216 ..... *7-23*
7.4.1.3 OBR-3 Filler order number (EI) 00217 ..... *7-24*
7.4.1.4 OBR-4 Universal service identifier (CE) 00238 ..... *7-25*
7.4.1.5 OBR-5 Priority - OBR (ID) 00239 ..... *7-25*
7.4.1.6 OBR-6 Requested date/time (TS) 00240 ..... *7-25*
7.4.1.7 OBR-7 Observation date/time (TS) 00241 ..... *7-25*
7.4.1.8 OBR-8 Observation end date/time (TS) 00242 ..... *7-25*
7.4.1.9 OBR-9 Collection volume (CQ) 00243 ..... *7-26*
7.4.1.10 OBR-10 Collector identifier (XCN) 00244 ..... *7-26*

7.4.1.11 OBR-11 Specimen action code (ID) 00245 ..... *7-26*
7.4.1.12 OBR-12 Danger code (CE) 00246 ..... *7-26*
7.4.1.13 OBR-13 Relevant clinical information (ST) 00247 ..... *7-27*
7.4.1.14 OBR-14 Specimen received date/time (TS) 00248 ..... *7-27*
7.4.1.15 OBR-15 Specimen source (CM) 00249 ..... *7-27*
7.4.1.16 OBR-16 Ordering provider (XCN) 00226 ..... *7-28*
7.4.1.17 OBR-17 Order callback phone number (XTN) 00250 ..... *7-28*
7.4.1.18 OBR-18 Placer field 1 (ST) 00251 ..... *7-28*
7.4.1.19 OBR-19 Placer field 2 (ST) 00252 ..... *7-28*
7.4.1.20 OBR-20 Filler field 1 (ST) 00253 ..... *7-28*
7.4.1.21 OBR-21 Filler field 2 (ST) 00254 ..... *7-29*
7.4.1.22 OBR-22 Results rpt/status chng - date/time (TS) 00255 ..... *7-29*
7.4.1.23 OBR-23 Charge to practice (CM) 00256 ..... *7-29*
7.4.1.24 OBR-24 Diagnostic serv sect ID (ID) 00257 ..... *7-29*
7.4.1.25 OBR-25 Result status (ID) 00258 ..... *7-30*
7.4.1.26 OBR-26 Parent result (CM) 00259 ..... *7-31*
7.4.1.27 OBR-27 Quantity/timing (TQ) 00221 ..... *7-32*
7.4.1.28 OBR-28 Result copies to (XCN) 00260 ..... *7-32*
7.4.1.29 OBR-29 Parent (CM) 00261 ..... *7-32*
7.4.1.30 OBR-30 Transportation mode (ID) 00262 ..... *7-33*
7.4.1.31 OBR-31 Reason for study (CE) 00263 ..... *7-33*
7.4.1.32 OBR-32 Principal result interpreter (CM) 00264 ..... *7-33*
7.4.1.33 OBR-33 Assistant result interpreter (CM) 00265 ..... *7-34*
7.4.1.34 OBR-34 Technician (CM) 00266 ..... *7-34*
7.4.1.35 OBR-35 Transcriptionist (CM) 00267 ..... *7-34*
7.4.1.36 OBR-36 Scheduled - date/time (TS) 00268 ..... *7-34*
7.4.1.37 OBR-37 Number of sample containers (NM) 01028 ..... *7-34*
7.4.1.38 OBR-38 Transport logistics of collected sample (CE) 01029 ..... *7-34*
7.4.1.39 OBR-39 Collector's comment (CE) 01030 ..... *7-35*
7.4.1.40 OBR-40 Transport arrangement responsibility (CE) 01031 ..... *7-35*
7.4.1.41 OBR-41 Transport arranged (ID) 01032 ..... *7-35*
7.4.1.42 OBR-42 Escort required (ID) 01033 ..... *7-35*
7.4.1.43 OBR-43 Planned patient transport comment (CE) 01034 ..... *7-35*
7.4.1.44 OBR-44 Procedure code (CE) 00393 ..... *7-36*
7.4.1.45 OBR-45 Procedure code modifier (CE) 01316 ..... *7-36*
7.4.1.46 OBR-46 Placer supplemental service information (CE) 01474 ..... *7-36*
7.4.1.47 OBR-47 Filler supplemental service information (CE) 01475 ..... *7-36*
7.4.2 OBX - OBSERVATION/RESULT SEGMENT 7-38
7.4.2.0 OBX field definitions *7-38*
7.4.2.1 OBX-1 Set ID - OBX (SI) 00569 ..... *7-38*
7.4.2.2 OBX-2 Value type (ID) 00570 ..... *7-39*
7.4.2.3 OBX-3 Observation identifier (CE) 00571 ..... *7-40*
7.4.2.4 OBX-4 Observation sub-ID (ST) 00572 ..... *7-41*
7.4.2.5 OBX-5 Observation value (*) 00573 ..... *7-43*
7.4.2.6 OBX-6 Units (CE) 00574 ..... *7-44*
7.4.2.7 OBX-7 References range (ST) 00575 ..... *7-48*
7.4.2.8 OBX-8 Abnormal flags (IS) 00576 ..... *7-49*
7.4.2.9 OBX-9 Probability (NM) 00577 ..... *7-50*
7.4.2.10 OBX-10 Nature of abnormal test (ID) 00578 ..... *7-50*
7.4.2.11 OBX-11 Observation result status (ID) 00579 ..... *7-50*
7.4.2.12 OBX-12 Date last observation normal value (TS) 00580 ..... *7-51*
7.4.2.13 OBX-13 User defined access checks (ST) 00581 ..... *7-51*
7.4.2.14 OBX-14 Date/time of the observation (TS) 00582 ..... *7-52*

7.4.2.15 OBX-15 Producer's ID (CE) 00583 ..... *7-52*
7.4.2.16 OBX-16 Responsible observer (XCN) 00584 ..... *7-52*
7.4.2.17 OBX-17 Observation method (CE) 00936 ..... *7-52*
7.4.2.18 OBX-18 Equipment instance identifier (EI) 01479 ..... *7-53*
7.4.2.19 OBX-19 Date/time of the analysis (TS) 01480 ..... *7-53*

7.5 EXAMPLES OF USE 7-53

7.5.1 QUERY/RESPONSE 7-53
7.5.2 UNSOLICITED 7-55
7.5.3 LABORATORY 7-55
7.5.4 NARRATIVE REPORT MESSAGES 7-57
7.5.5 REPORTING CULTURES AND SUSCEPTIBILITIES 7-59
7.5.5.1 Culture battery/report representation *7-59*
7.5.5.2 Susceptibility battery/report representation *7-60*
7.5.5.3 Identification of the organism for a susceptibility battery *7-60*
7.5.6 EKG RESULTS REPORTING 7-61
7.5.7 PATIENT-SPECIFIC CLINICAL DATA WITH AN ORDER 7-63

7.6 CLINICAL TRIALS 7-63

7.6.1 GLOSSARY 7-64
7.6.1.1 Clinical trial: *7-64*
7.6.1.2 Phase of a clinical trial: *7-64*
7.6.1.3 Data schedule: *7-65*

7.7 CLINICAL TRIALS - TRIGGER EVENTS AND MESSAGE DEFINITIONS 7-66

7.7.1 CRM - CLINICAL STUDY REGISTRATION MESSAGE (EVENTS C01-C08) 7-67
7.7.2 CSU - UNSOLICITED STUDY DATA MESSAGE (EVENTS C09-C12) 7-67

7.8 CLINICAL TRIALS – SEGMENT DEFINITIONS 7-68

7.8.1 CSR - CLINICAL STUDY REGISTRATION SEGMENT 7-68
7.8.1.0 CSR field definitions *7-69*
7.8.1.1 CSR-1 Sponsor study ID (EI) 01011 ..... *7-69*
7.8.1.2 CSR-2 Alternate study ID (EI) 01036 ..... *7-69*
7.8.1.3 CSR-3 Institution registering the patient (CE) 01037 ..... *7-69*
7.8.1.4 CSR-4 Sponsor patient ID (CX) 01038 ..... *7-69*
7.8.1.5 CSR-5 Alternate patient ID - CSR (CX) 01039 ..... *7-69*
7.8.1.6 CSR-6 Date/time patient of patient study registration (TS) 01040 ..... *7-70*
7.8.1.7 CSR-7 Person performing study registration (XCN) 01041 ..... *7-70*
7.8.1.8 CSR-8 Study authorizing provider (XCN) 01042 ..... *7-70*
7.8.1.9 CSR-9 Date/time patient study consent signed (TS) 01043 ..... *7-70*
7.8.1.10 CSR-10 Patient study eligibility status (CE) 01044 ..... *7-71*
7.8.1.11 CSR-11 Study randomization date/time (TS) 01045 ..... *7-71*
7.8.1.12 CSR-12 Randomized study arm (CE) 01046 ..... *7-71*
7.8.1.13 CSR-13 Stratum for study randomization (CE) 01047 ..... *7-71*
7.8.1.14 CSR-14 Patient evaluability status (CE) 01048 ..... *7-71*
7.8.1.15 CSR-15 Date/time ended study (TS) 01049 ..... *7-71*
7.8.1.16 CSR-16 Reason ended study (CE) 01050 ..... *7-72*
7.8.2 CSP - CLINICAL STUDY PHASE SEGMENT 7-72
7.8.2.0 CSP field definitions *7-72*
7.8.2.1 CSP-1 Study phase Identifier (CE) 01022 ..... *7-72*
7.8.2.2 CSP-2 Date/time study phase began (TS) 01052 ..... *7-72*
7.8.2.3 CSP-3 Date/time study phase ended (TS) 01053 ..... *7-73*

7.8.2.4 CSP-4 Study phase evaluability (CE) 01054 ..... *7-73*
7.8.3 CSS - CLINICAL STUDY DATA SCHEDULE SEGMENT 7-73
7.8.3.0 CSS field definitions *7-73*
7.8.3.1 CSS-1 Study scheduled time point (CE) 01055 ..... *7-73*
7.8.3.2 CSS-2 Study scheduled patient time point (TS) 01056 ..... *7-73*
7.8.3.3 CSS-3 Study quality control codes (CE) 01057 ..... *7-74*
7.8.4 CTI - CLINICAL TRIAL IDENTIFICATION SEGMENT 7-74
7.8.4.0 CTI field definitions *7-74*
7.8.4.1 CTI-1 Sponsor study ID (EI) 01011 ..... *7-74*
7.8.4.2 CTI-2 Study phase identifier (CE) 01022 ..... *7-74*
7.8.4.3 CTI-3 Study scheduled time point (CE) 01055 ..... *7-74*
7.8.5 CM0 CLINICAL STUDY MASTER SEGMENT 7-74
7.8.6 CM1 CLINICAL STUDY PHASE MASTER SEGMENT 7-75
7.8.7 CM2 CLINICAL STUDY SCHEDULE MASTER SEGMENT 7-75

7.9 CLINICAL TRIALS – EXAMPLES OF USE 7-75

7.9.1 CRM - MESSAGE WHEN PATIENT REGISTERED ON A CLINICAL TRIAL 7-75
7.9.2 CRM - MESSAGE WHEN PATIENT BEGINS A PHASE OF A CLINICAL TRIAL 7-75
7.9.3 CSU - MESSAGE REPORTING MONTHLY PATIENT DATA UPDATES TO THE SPONSOR 7-75

7.10 PRODUCT EXPERIENCE 7-77

7.10.1 GLOSSARY 7-78
7.10.1.1 Drug: *7-78*
7.10.1.2 Medical device: *7-78*
7.10.1.3 Product: *7-78*
7.10.1.4 Non-proprietary (generic) name: *7-78*
7.10.1.5 Trade (brand) name: *7-79*
7.10.1.6 Adverse event/adverse experience: *7-79*
7.10.1.7 Adverse drug reaction: *7-79*
7.10.1.8 Causation: *7-79*
7.10.1.9 Causal relationship: *7-79*
7.10.1.10 Regulatory agency: *7-80*
7.10.1.11 Product manufacturer: *7-80*
7.10.1.12 Holder of marketing authorization: *7-80*
7.10.1.13 Serious adverse product reaction: *7-80*
7.10.1.14 Expected adverse product reaction: *7-80*
7.10.2 REFERENCES 7-81

7.11 PRODUCT EXPERIENCE - TRIGGER EVENTS AND MESSAGE DEFINITIONS 7-81

7.11.1 PEX - PRODUCT EXPERIENCE MESSAGE (EVENTS P07, P08) 7-81
7.11.2 SUR - SUMMARY PRODUCT EXPERIENCE REPORT (EVENT P09) 7-83

7.12 PRODUCT EXPERIENCE – SEGMENT DEFINITIONS 7-85

7.12.1 PES - PRODUCT EXPERIENCE SENDER SEGMENT 7-85
7.12.1.0 PES - field definitions *7-85*
7.12.1.1 PES-1 Sender organization name (XON) 01059 ..... *7-85*
7.12.1.2 PES-2 Sender individual name (XCN) 01060 ..... *7-86*
7.12.1.3 PES-3 Sender address (XAD) 01062 ..... *7-86*
7.12.1.4 PES-4 Sender telephone (XTN) 01063 ..... *7-86*
7.12.1.5 PES-5 Sender event identifier (EI) 01064 ..... *7-86*
7.12.1.6 PES-6 Sender sequence number (NM) 01065 ..... *7-87*
7.12.1.7 PES-7 Sender event description (FT) 01066 ..... *7-87*

7.12.1.8 PES-8 Sender comment (FT) 01067 ..... *7-87*
7.12.1.9 PES-9 Sender aware date/time (TS) 01068 ..... *7-87*
7.12.1.10 PES-10 Event report date (TS) 01069 ..... *7-87*
7.12.1.11 PES-11 Event report timing /type (ID) 01070 ..... *7-87*
7.12.1.12 PES-12 Event report source (ID) 01071 ..... *7-88*
7.12.1.13 PES-13 Event reported to (ID) 01072 ..... *7-88*
7.12.2 PEO - PRODUCT EXPERIENCE OBSERVATION SEGMENT 7-89
7.12.2.0 PEO field definitions *7-89*
7.12.2.1 PEO-1 Event identifiers used (CE) 01073 ..... *7-89*
7.12.2.2 PEO-2 Event symptom/diagnosis code (CE) 01074 ..... *7-90*
7.12.2.3 PEO-3 Event onset date/time (TS) 01075 ..... *7-90*
7.12.2.4 PEO-4 Event exacerbation date/time (TS) 01076 ..... *7-90*
7.12.2.5 PEO-5 Event improved date/time (TS) 01077 ..... *7-90*
7.12.2.6 PEO-6 Event ended data/time (TS) 01078 ..... *7-90*
7.12.2.7 PEO-7 Event location occurred address (XAD) 01079 ..... *7-90*
7.12.2.8 PEO-8 Event qualification (ID) 01080 ..... *7-90*
7.12.2.9 PEO-9 Event serious (ID) 01081 ..... *7-91*
7.12.2.10 PEO-10 Event expected (ID) 01082 ..... *7-91*
7.12.2.11 PEO-11 Event outcome (ID) 01083 ..... *7-91*
7.12.2.12 PEO-12 Patient outcome (ID) 01084 ..... *7-92*
7.12.2.13 PEO-13 Event description from others (FT) 01085 ..... *7-92*
7.12.2.14 PEO-14 Event description from original reporter (FT) 01086 ..... *7-92*
7.12.2.15 PEO-15 Event description from patient (FT) 01087 ..... *7-92*
7.12.2.16 PEO-16 Event description from practitioner (FT) 01088 ..... *7-93*
7.12.2.17 PEO-17 Event description from autopsy (FT) 01089 ..... *7-93*
7.12.2.18 PEO-18 Cause of death (CE) 01090 ..... *7-93*
7.12.2.19 PEO-19 Primary observer name (XPN) 01091 ..... *7-93*
7.12.2.20 PEO-20 Primary observer address (XAD) 01092 ..... *7-93*
7.12.2.21 PEO-21 Primary observer telephone (XTN) 01093 ..... *7-93*
7.12.2.22 PEO-22 Primary observer's qualification (ID) 01094 ..... *7-93*
7.12.2.23 PEO-23 Confirmation provided by (ID) 01095 ..... *7-94*
7.12.2.24 PEO-24 Primary observer aware date/time (TS) 01096 ..... *7-94*
7.12.2.25 PEO-25 Primary observer's identity may be divulged (ID) 01097 ..... *7-94*
7.12.3 PCR - POSSIBLE CAUSAL RELATIONSHIP SEGMENT 7-94
7.12.3.0 PCR field definitions *7-95*
7.12.3.1 PCR-1 Implicated product (CE) 01098 ..... *7-95*
7.12.3.2 PRC-2 Generic product (IS) 01099 ..... *7-95*
7.12.3.3 PCR-3 Product class (CE) 01100 ..... *7-96*
7.12.3.4 PCR-4 Total duration of therapy (CQ) 01101 ..... *7-96*
7.12.3.5 PCR-5 Product manufacture date (TS) 01102 ..... *7-96*
7.12.3.6 PCR-6 Product expiration date (TS) 01103 ..... *7-96*
7.12.3.7 PCR-7 Product implantation date (TS) 01104 ..... *7-96*
7.12.3.8 PCR-8 Product explantation date (TS) 01105 ..... *7-96*
7.12.3.9 PCR-9 Single use device (IS) 01106 ..... *7-96*
7.12.3.10 PCR-10 Indication for product use (CE) 01107 ..... *7-97*
7.12.3.11 PCR-11 Product problem (IS) 01108 ..... *7-97*
7.12.3.12 PCR-12 Product serial/lot number (ST) 01109 ..... *7-97*
7.12.3.13 PCR-16 Product available for inspection (IS) 01110 ..... *7-97*
7.12.3.14 PCR-14 Product evaluation performed (CE) 01111 ..... *7-97*
7.12.3.15 PCR-15 Product evaluation status (CE) 01112 ..... *7-97*
7.12.3.16 PCR-16 Product evaluation results (CE) 01113 ..... *7-98*
7.12.3.17 PCR-17 Evaluated product source (ID) 01114 ..... *7-98*
7.12.3.18 PCR-18 Date product returned to manufacturer (TS) 01115 ..... *7-98*

7.12.3.19 PCR-19 Device operator qualifications (ID) 01116 ..... *7-99*
7.12.3.20 PCR-20 Relatedness assessment (ID) 01117 ..... *7-99*
7.12.3.21 PCR-21 Action taken in response to the event (ID) 01118 ..... *7-99*
7.12.3.22 PCR-22 Event causality observations (ID) 01119 ..... *7-99*
7.12.3.23 PCR-23 Indirect exposure mechanism (ID) 01120 ..... *7-100*
7.12.4 PSH - PRODUCT SUMMARY HEADER SEGMENT 7-100
7.12.4.0 PSH field definitions *7-101*
7.12.4.1 PSH-1 Report type (ST) 01233 ..... *7-101*
7.12.4.2 PSH-2 Report form identifier (ST) 01297 ..... *7-101*
7.12.4.3 PSH-3 Report date (TS) 01235 ..... *7-101*
7.12.4.4 PSH-4 Report interval start date (TS) 01236 ..... *7-101*
7.12.4.5 PSH-5 Report interval end date (TS) 01237 ..... *7-101*
7.12.4.6 PSH-6 Quantity manufactured (CQ) 01238 ..... *7-101*
7.12.4.7 PSH-7 Quantity distributed (CQ) 01239 ..... *7-101*
7.12.4.8 PSH-8 Quantity distributed method (ID) 01240 ..... *7-102*
7.12.4.9 PSH-9 Quantity distributed comment (FT) 01241 ..... *7-102*
7.12.4.10 PSH-10 Quantity in use (CQ) 01242 ..... *7-102*
7.12.4.11 PSH-11 Quantity in use method (ID) 01243 ..... *7-102*
7.12.4.12 PSH-12 Quantity in use comment (FT) 01244 ..... *7-102*
7.12.4.13 PSH-13 Number of product experience reports filed by facility (NM) 01245 ..... *7-102*
7.12.4.14 PSH-14 Number of product experience reports filed by distributor (NM) 01246 ..... *7-103*
7.12.5 PDC - PRODUCT DETAIL COUNTRY SEGMENT 7-103
7.12.5.0 PDC field definitions *7-103*
7.12.5.1 PDC-1 Manufacturer/distributor (XON) 01247 ..... *7-103*
7.12.5.2 PDC-2 Country (CE) 01248 ..... *7-103*
7.12.5.3 PDC-3 Brand name (ST) 01249 ..... *7-103*
7.12.5.4 PDC-4 Device family name (ST) 01250 ..... *7-104*
7.12.5.5 PDC-5 Generic name (CE) 01251 ..... *7-104*
7.12.5.6 PDC-6 Model identifier (ST) 01252 ..... *7-104*
7.12.5.7 PDC-7 Catalogue identifier (ST) 01253 ..... *7-104*
7.12.5.8 PDC-8 Other identifier (ST) 01254 ..... *7-104*
7.12.5.9 PDC-9 Product code (CE) 01255 ..... *7-104*
7.12.5.10 PDC-10 Marketing basis (ID) 01256 ..... *7-104*
7.12.5.11 PDC-11 Marketing approval ID (ST) 01257 ..... *7-105*
7.12.5.12 PDC-12 Labeled shelf life (CQ) 01258 ..... *7-105*
7.12.5.13 PDC-13 Expected shelf life (CQ) 01259 ..... *7-105*
7.12.5.14 PDC-14 Date first marketed (TS) 01260 ..... *7-105*
7.12.5.15 PDC-15 Date last marketed (TS) 01261 ..... *7-105*
7.12.6 FAC - FACILITY SEGMENT 7-105
7.12.6.0 FAC field definitions *7-106*
7.12.6.1 FAC-1 Facility ID-FAC (EI) 01262 ..... *7-106*
7.12.6.2 FAC-2 Facility type (ID) 01263 ..... *7-106*
7.12.6.3 FAC-3 Facility address (XAD) 01264 ..... *7-106*
7.12.6.4 FAC-4 Facility telecommunication (XTN) 01265 ..... *7-106*
7.12.6.5 FAC-5 Contact person (XCN) 01266 ..... *7-106*
7.12.6.6 FAC-6 Contact title (ST) 01267 ..... *7-107*
7.12.6.7 FAC-7 Contact address (XAD) 01166 ..... *7-107*
7.12.6.8 FAC-8 Contact telecommunication (XTN) 01269 ..... *7-107*
7.12.6.9 FAC-9 Signature authority (XCN) 01270 ..... *7-107*
7.12.6.10 FAC-10 Signature authority title (ST) 01271 ..... *7-107*
7.12.6.11 FAC-11 Signature authority address (XAD) 01272 ..... *7-107*
7.12.6.12 FAC-12 Signature authority telecommunication (XTN) 01273 ..... *7-108*

7.13 PRODUCT EXPERIENCE – EXAMPLES OF USE 7-108

7.14 WAVEFORM 7-109

7.14.1 WAVEFORM RESULT DATA TYPES 7-109
7.14.1.1 NA - numeric array 7-109
7.14.1.2 MA - multiplexed array 7-110
7.14.1.3 CD - Channel definition 7-110
7.14.1.4 Waveform source (CM) 7-111
7.14.1.5 Channel sensitivity and units (CM) 7-111
7.14.1.6 Channel calibration parameters (CM) 7-112
7.14.1.7 Channel sampling frequency (NM) 7-113
7.14.1.8 Minimum and maximum data values (CM) 7-113
7.14.2 SPECIFIC OBSERVATION ID SUFFIXES 7-115
7.14.2.1 Timing information (TIM) 7-115
7.14.2.2 Channel definition data (CHN) 7-115
7.14.2.3 Waveform digital data (WAV) 7-116
7.14.2.4 Waveform annotation (ANO) 7-116

7.15 WAVEFORM – TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGE DEFINITIONS 7-117

7.15.1 W01 - WAVEFORM RESULT, UNSOLICITED TRANSMISSION OF REQUESTED INFORMATION 7-117
7.15.2 W02 - WAVEFORM RESULT, RESPONSE TO QUERY 7-117

7.16 WAVEFORM – SEGMENT DEFINITIONS 7-117

7.16.1 COMBINING RULES FOR WAVEFORM OBX SEGMENTS 7-117
7.16.2 RESTRICTIONS ON VALUATION OF OBX SEGMENT FIELDS 7-117
7.16.3 OBX SEGMENT - TIM CATEGORY 7-118
7.16.4 OBX SEGMENT - CHN CATEGORY 7-118
7.16.5 OBX SEGMENT - WAV CATEGORY 7-119
7.16.6 OBX SEGMENT – ANO CATEGORY 7-119

7.17 WAVEFORM – EXAMPLES OF USE 7-120

7.17.1 EXAMPLE 1: "CHANNEL-BLOCK" FORMAT, USING THREE SEPARATE SETS OF TIM, CHN, WAV AND CATEGORY OBX SEGMENTS: 7-121
7.17.2 EXAMPLE 2: "CHANNEL-BLOCK" FORMAT, USING A SINGLE SET OF TIM, CHN, WAV AND CATEGORY OBX SEGMENTS, WITH MULTIPLE CHANNELS WITHIN THE ONE WAV CATEGORY RESULT SEGMENT: 7-121
7.17.3 EXAMPLE 3: "CHANNEL-MULTIPLEXED" FORMAT, WITH MULTIPLE CHANNELS WITHIN THE ONE WAV CATEGORY RESULT SEGMENT: 7-122
7.17.4 EXAMPLE 4: "CHANNEL-BLOCK" FORMAT, USING THREE SEPARATE SETS OF TIM, CHN, WAV AND CATEGORY OBX SEGMENTS WITH A BREAK IN WAVEFORM DATA USED TO PINPOINT WAVEFORM ANNOTATIONS FOR CHANNELS ONE AND THREE: 7-122

7.18 TABLES LISTINGS 7-123

7.18.1 USER DEFINED TABLE 0396 – CODING SYSTEM 7-123
7.18.2 HL7 TABLE 0163 – BODY SITE 7-128
7.18.3 HL7 TABLE 0070 – SPECIMEN SOURCE CODES 7-130
7.18.4 FIGURE 7-9 – COMMON ISO DERIVED UNITS & ISO+ EXTENSIONS 7-133

7.19 OUTSTANDING ISSUES 7-142

7.2 PURPOSE

This chapter describes the transaction set required for sending structured patient-oriented clinical data from one computer system to another. A common use of these transaction sets will be to transmit observations and results of diagnostic studies from the producing system (e.g., clinical laboratory system, EKG system) (the filler), to the ordering system (e.g., HIS order entry, physician's office system) (the placer). However, the transaction set is not limited to such transactions. Observations can be sent from producing systems to archival medical record systems (not necessarily the order placer) and from such medical record systems to other systems that were not part of the ordering loop, e.g., an office practice system of the referring physician for inpatient test results ordered by an inpatient surgeon. This chapter also provides mechanisms for registering clinical trials and methods for linking orders and results to clinical trials and for reporting experiences with drugs and devices. These transaction sets permit the transmission of any kind of clinical observations including (but not limited to) clinical laboratory results, the results of imaging studies (excluding the image), EKG pulmonary function studies, measures of patient status and condition, vital signs, intake and output, severity and/or frequency of symptoms, drug allergies, problem lists, diagnostic lists, physician and nursing history, physicals, progress notes, operative notes and so on. An observation can be one of many data types. The main ones are text, numbers and codes. This provides the flexibility needed to transmit observations that are recorded as continuous values (e.g., glucose, diastolic blood pressure), as categorical values, e.g., patient position (sitting, reclining or standing), VDRL (reactive, weakly reactive or nonreactive), or as text. An entire History and Physical could be transmitted as an observation whose value is one large chunk of formatted text.

This chapter provides mechanisms for transmitting *structured*, record-oriented reports. This means that individual observations are transmitted as separate logical entities (objects), and within this entity, separate fields are defined for identifying the observation, its values, its units, normal ranges, etc., such that the receiving system can "understand," reorganize and/or react to the contents of these messages. Structured reports are to be distinguished from text-oriented reports which can also be transmitted via HL7 using the UDM message described in Chapter 2. The latter are ASCII images of nonstandard printed reports intended for display to humans. For practical purposes their contents are not understandable to the computer.

Observations may be transmitted in a solicited (in response to a query) or unsolicited mode. In the solicited mode, a user requests a set of observations according to criteria transmitted by the user. The sending system responds with existing data to satisfy the query (subject to access controls). Queries do not elicit new observations by the target system, they simply retrieve old observations. (See Chapter 2 for full discussion of the query transmission.)

The unsolicited mode is used primarily to transmit the values of new observations. It is the mode used by producing services to return the values of observations requested by an ordering system. A laboratory system, for example, would usually send the results of an AM electrolytes to the ordering HIS via the unsolicited mode. An intensive care system would send the blood pressures to the same HIS by the same mode. Calling such transactions unsolicited may sound like a misnomer, but is not. The placing service solicits the producing service to make the observation. It could also (through a query) solicit the value of that observation after it has been made. However, such an approach would demand continuous polling of the producing system until the result was produced. Using the unsolicited mode, the producing service returns the value of an observation as soon as it is available. The unsolicited mode can also be used to transmit new results to a system (e.g., an archival medical record system) that did not order the observation. The transactions that define these modes are more fully described in Section7.2, "Trigger Events & Message Definitions."

Observations are usually ordered and reported as sets (batteries) of many separate observations. Physicians order electrolytes (consisting of sodium, potassium, chloride, bicarbonate) or vitals (consisting of diastolic blood pressure, systolic blood pressure, pulse, and temperature). Moreover, tests that we may think of as single entity, e.g., cardiac echo, usually yield multiple separate measurements, e.g., left ventricular diameter, left atrial diameter, etc. Moreover, observations that are usually reported as text (e.g., the review of systems from the history and physical) can also be considered a set of separately analyzable units (e.g., cardiac history, pulmonary history,

genito-urinary history, etc.). We strongly suggest that all text clinical reports be broken down into such separate analyzable entities and that these individual entities be transmitted as separate OBX segments. Because many attributes of a set of observations taken at one time will be identical, one OBR segment serves as a header for the report and carries the information that applies to all of the individual observations in the set. In the case of ordered observations, the OBR segment is a "turn-around document" like the manual request forms it replaces. It carries information about the order to the producing service; a copy of the OBR with additional fields completed is returned with the observations to the requesting service.

Not all observations are preceded by an order. However, all observations whether explicitly ordered or initiated without an order are reported with an OBR segment as the report header.

The major segments (OBR, OBX) defined in this chapter, their fields, and the code tables have been defined in collaboration with ASTM E31.11 with the goal of keeping HL7 observation transmission the same as ASTM E1238 in pursuit of the goals of ANSI HISPP and the Message Standards Developers Subcommittee. (Some sections of this chapter have been taken with permission directly from the E1238-91 document and vice versa in pursuit of those goals).

The OBR segment provides information that applies to all of the observations that follow. It includes a field that identifies a particular battery (or panel or set) of observations (e.g., electrolytes, vital signs or Admission H&P). For simplicity we will refer to the observation set as the battery. The battery usually corresponds to the entity that is ordered or performed as a unit. (In the case of a query, observation sets may be a more arbitrary collection of observations.) The OBX segment provides information about a single observation, and it includes a field that identifies that single observation (e.g., potassium, diastolic blood pressure or admission diagnosis). Both of these fields assume master tables that define coding systems (the universe of valid identifying codes) for batteries and observations, respectively. These tables will usually be part of the producing and sending services application and (usually) include many other useful pieces of information about the observation or battery. Segments for transmitting such master file information between systems that produce and systems that use clinical information are described in Chapter 8.

This Standard does not require the use of a particular coding system to identify either batteries or single observations In the past, local institutions tended to invent their own unique code systems for identifying test and other clinical observations because standard codes were not available. Such local code systems sufficed for transmitting information within the institutions but presented high barriers to pooling data from many sources for research or for building medical record systems. However, standard code systems such as LOINC® and SNOMED now exist for many of these purposes, and we strongly encourage their use in observation reporting. These codes can be sent either as the only code or they can be sent along with the local historic code as the second code system in a CE code.

In past versions of the HL7 standard, Appendix A to Chapter 7 presented suggestions for constructing clinical codes from existing procedure code systems such as CPT4. Appendix A is now part of the Implementation Guide and contains LOINC® codes for most laboratory tests and many common clinical variables and codes for reporting observations from the laboratory, 12-lead EKG, cardiac echoes, obstetrical ultrasounds, radiology reports, history and physical findings, tumor registries, vital signs, intake and outputs, and more. The most recent version of the LOINC® database, which includes records for more than 26,000 observations and includes codes, names, synonyms and other attributes (such as the molecular weights of chemical moieties) for each observation, is available from the Regenstrief Institute file server at **http://www.regenstrief.org/loinc/loinc.htm** . Codes for Neurophysiologic variables (EEG, EMG, Evoked potentials) are provided in Appendix X2 of ASTM E1467. Some parts of this document (the discussion and tables defining units, the discussion of the rules of mapping observations to OBX segments, and some of the examples at the end of the chapter have been copied (with permission) from ASTM E1238.

As is true throughout this Standard, the emphasis should be on the abstract messages, defined without regard to the encoding rules. The example messages, however, are based upon the HL7 encoding rules.

7.2.1 Preface (organization of this chapter)

Following this Purpose and general information section, the remainder of this chapter is organized into four main subject areas; General, Clinical Trials, Product Experience and Waveform. Sections 7.1 to 7.4 document the trigger events, message definitions, segment definitions and examples for general observation reporting. Sections 7.5 to 7.8 include all information related to Clinical Trials. Sections 7.9 to 7.12 include all information related to Product Experience messaging, and sections 7.13 and 7.16 includes Waveform messaging information. Outstanding issues are listed in section 7.17

7.2.2 Glossary

7.2.2.1 Placer:

Person or service that requests (places order for) an observation battery, e.g., the physician, the practice, clinic, or ward service, that orders a lab test, X-ray, vital signs, etc. The meaning is synonymous with, and used interchangeably with, requestor. See *ORC-2-placer order number*, Section 4.3.1.2, “Placer order number.”

7.2.2.2 Filler:

Person, or service, who produces the observations (fills the order) requested by the requestor. The word is synonymous with "producer" and includes diagnostic services and clinical services and care providers who report observations about their patients. The clinical laboratory is a producer of lab test results (filler of a lab order), the nursing service is the producer of vital signs observations (the filler of orders to measure vital signs), and so on. See *ORC-3-filler order number*, Section 4.3.1.3, “Filler order number.”

7.2.2.3 Battery:

A set of one or more observations identified as by a single name and code number, and treated as a shorthand unit for ordering or retrieving results of the constituent observations. In keeping with the mathematical conventions about set, a battery can be a single observation. Vital signs, electrolytes, routine admission tests, and obstetrical ultrasound are all examples. Vital signs (conventionally) consist of diastolic and systolic blood pressure, pulse, and respiratory rate. Electrolytes usually consist of Na+, K+, Cl-, and HCO3-. Routine admission tests might contain CBC, Electrolytes, SMA12, and Urinalysis. (Note that the elements of a battery for our purposes may also be batteries). Obstetrical ultrasound is a battery made up of traditional component measurements and the impression, all of which would be returned as separate results when returned to the requestor. A test involving waveform recording (such as an EKG) can be represented as a battery comprised of results of many categories, including digital waveform data, labels and annotations to the data, measurements, and the impression

The word battery is used in this specification synonymously with the word profile or panel. The individual observation elements within a battery may be characteristic of a physiologic system (e.g., liver function tests), or many different physiologic systems.

7.2.2.4 Observation:

A measurement of a single variable or a single value derived logically and/or algebraically from other measured or derived values. A test result, a diastolic blood pressure, and a single chest X-ray impression are examples of observations. In certain circumstances, tracings and images may be treated by HL7 as individual observations and sent as a single OBX. These include waveform data described in Section 7.15, "Waveform – Trigger Events & Message Definitions," and encapsulated data aggregates using the ED data type described in Section 2.8.14, "ED-encapsulated data," (which can represent actual images, audio data, etc.).

7.2.2.5 Segment (record):

A typed aggregate of fields (fields) describing one complete aspect of a message. For example, the information about one order is sent as type of segment (OBR), the information related to an observation is sent as another segment (OBX).

The segment in a message is analogous to a record in a database, and in previous versions of the Standard we used record in place of the word segment. We have changed the nomenclature to be consistent with HL7 and other standards organizations in this version.

7.2.2.6 Field:

One specific attribute of a segment, for example, patient diagnosis, which may contain aggregates of fields further refining the basic attribute.

7.2.2.7 Repeated value:

Some fields may contain many repeat fields. For example, the diagnoses field may contain many different diagnoses.

7.2.2.8 Field components:

A field entry may also have discernible parts or components. For example, the patient's name is recorded as last name, first name, and middle initial, each of which is a distinct entity separated by a component delimiter (sub-subfield in ASTM E1238-94).

7.2.3 Narrative reports as batteries with many OBX

Narrative reports from services such as Radiology usually consist of a number of subcomponents (e.g., a chest X-ray report may consist of a description, an impression, and a recommendation). Other studies, such as echocardiograms, contain analogous components, as well as numeric observations (e.g., left ventricular and diastolic diameter). Surgical pathology reports may contain information about multiple specimens and reports: the anatomic source, the gross description, the microscopic description, and a diagnostic impression for each specimen.

The current Standard treats each component of a narrative report as a separate "test" or observation. Just as a CHEM12 is transmitted as an order segment (OBR) plus 12 OBX segments, a chest X-ray would be transmitted as an order (OBR) segment plus three OBX segments, one for the description, one for the impression, and one for the recommendations. Similarly, an EKG report would be transmitted as an order

segment (OBR), two OBX segments for the impression and recommendation, and additional OBX segments for each EKG measurement, e.g. the PR interval, QR interval, QRS axis, and so on.

We have defined code suffixes for constructing observation IDs for the common components of narrative reports (see Figure 7-1). The observation identifier for each such component is obtained by concatenating the observation battery ID (the ID in *OBR-4-universal service ID* of the preceding OBR from any coding system) with the appropriate suffix. The observation ID for a chest X-ray impression, for example, would be the chest X-ray observation ID (if CPT4, it would be 71020), a subcomponent delimiter, and the suffix, IMP, i.e., 71020&IMP.

This same combining rule applies to other coding systems including local and universal procedural codes (see Chapter 4). For example, if a local code for EKG was E793, and the locally agreed upon designation for that local code was EKG, the impression would be identified as E793&IMP^^99EKG.

Note: The "99EKG" in the 3rd component is included to indicate a local code. The EKG's description, in this case, would be E793&GDT^^99EKG.

Although it is strongly discouraged, the sender and receiver may agree to allow the omission of the observation ID component of a result segment when it is the same as the observation ID of the preceding OBR. In this case, only the ampersand and the suffix would have to be sent, e.g., &IMP or &REC, in *OBX-3-observation identifier* of a result segment. The full code would be assumed as the test identifier (recorded in the order segment) plus the category identifier recorded in the observation segment.

Figure 7-1. Observation ID suffixes

Coded Results	Suffix	Type
Diagnostic Impression	IMP	CE
Recommendation	REC	CE
Confirming procedures	CNP	CE
Procedure Medication	MED	CE
Anatomic Site	ANT	CE
Device/Instrument	DEV	CE
Serial # Device/Instrument	SER	ST
Bulk Text Reports		
Gross Or General Description Of The Study	GDT	TX or FT
Microscopic Or Secondary Description	MDT	TX or FT
Technician's Comment	TCM	TX or FT
Addendum Note	ADT	TX or FT
Other		
Diagnosis Onset Date/Time	ITM	TS
Diagnosis Resolution Date/Time	RTM	TS

Coded Results	Suffix	Type
Comparison Study	CMS	CE
Comparison Date/Time	CMT	TS
Comparison Results	CMR	CE
Comparison Change	CMC	CE
Predicted Value	PRD	ST
Percent Predicted	PPR	ST
After Drug Observed	AFD	ST
Predicted Value After Drug	ADP	ST
Percent Predicted After Drug	APP	ST
Timing Information	TIM	TS
Channel Definition Data	CHN	CD
Waveform Digital Data	WAS	NA or MA
Waveform Annotation	ANO	CE

7.2.4 Suffixes for defining observation IDs for common components of narrative reports

The following subsections define each of the suffices except for the specialized waveform suffices, which are defined in Section 7.14.1.8.2, "Maximum data value (NM)."

7.2.4.1 Diagnostic impression (IMP)

When the suffix is IMP (*OBX-3-observation identifier*), the result is a diagnosis or finding, stored as a CE data type. Multiple result segments with an IMP suffix can be used if there are multiple parts to the study and each have an associated diagnosis (for example, the awake and sleep portion of an EEG). Each of these would have a different observation sub-ID. Multiple result segments with an IMP suffix can also be used if there are separate diagnoses corresponding to separate anatomic sites; in this case, the site for each diagnosis (each result segment with an IMP suffix) must be specified by an immediately preceding result segment with a suffix of ANT (see Section 7.2.4.5, "Anatomic site (ANT)"), which also has the same observation sub-ID. When multiple distinct diagnostic impressions are being reported, for example, mitral valve prolapse and aortic stenosis, each distinct impression should be sent in a separate OBX segment. More than one code may be included within one coded result segment, but only when such codes are modifiers of the principal impression, e.g., to report additional detail about the finding, not to report an entirely different finding. In this case, the *OBX-5-observation value* field may repeat, with each instance or repetition specifying one of the related coded impressions.

The coded data type for impressions does not mean that a reporting service must actually code all such impressions. The diagnostic impression can be sent as dictated text, but the text should be sent in the second component of the CE data type without a code to distinguish it from code, i.e. it should be preceded by a component delimiter, e.g., `^congestive heart failure`.

When multiple separate text impressions are being reported, they should be reported in separate OBX segments to indicate that they are distinct impressions.

7.2.4.2 Recommendation (REC)

When the suffix is REC (*OBX-3-observation identifier*), the value is a CE result, representing the reading physician's recommendations about repeat testing, follow up or therapy. For example, when an ambiguous lesion result is seen on a mammogram, the reading physician might recommend a repeat mammogram in six months, or a needle biopsy immediately. The recommended procedures are recorded as codes and/or text descriptions in the coded identifier structure.

If more than one follow up study is recommended, each such recommendation is sent in a separate REC.

7.2.4.3 Confirming procedures (CNP)

The confirming procedure OBX suffix identifies additional studies used to confirm the diagnosis reported in the IMP OBX. If, for example, electron microscopy was done to confirm a surgical pathology diagnosis, the identifier for electron microscopy *OBX-3-observation identifier* would be stored as the value field of an observation ID with a confirming procedure suffix. Confirming procedures are most important in surgical pathology reports. But they might also be used by services such as endoscopy, to record the fact that a biopsy, culture, etc., was taken during the procedure. If more than one confirming procedure was used, each is sent in a separate result segment with observation ID suffix CNP.

7.2.4.4 Procedure medication (MED)

A coded result segment with a suffix of MED (*OBX-3-observation identifier*) indicates that the segment contained information about medication given as part of the procedure -- contrast medication, medication intended to invoke a physiologic response (e.g., to be used in stress testing) or premedication. When patients receive more than one procedure medication, each medication should be reported in a separate OBX medication segment. If the transmitting system has codes available for medications, they would be recorded as the first component of *OBX-3-observation identifier*. The name and/or the dosages could be included in the second component of *OBX-5-observation value*.

A coded result segment with a suffix of MED (procedure medication) may also be used to define a medication administered during recording of digital waveform data or other extended diagnostic procedure, e.g., exercise test. These may be displayed by the receiving system overlaid with the other events reported. The procedure medication is assumed to pertain to and be associated with the data recorded at the time specified in *OBX-14-date/time of the observation*, of the OBX segment labeled with MED, when present.

7.2.4.5 Anatomic site (ANT)

Some diagnostic studies include observations about more than one anatomic site within one report. If, for example, a patient had an appendectomy incidental to gallbladder surgery, the pathologist's assessment of both specimens would usually be included under a single specimen number in one report. Each distinct anatomic site would be reported as a separate OBX segment with a suffix of ANT (*OBX-3-observation identifier*). More than one coded anatomic location may be included within a single OBX segment only when such additional codes are used to construct an identity for a single site. In this case only, the *OBX-5-observation value* field may repeat, with each instance or repetition specifying one of the related locations. Each OBX segment with an ANT suffix could be followed by one or more OBX segments with an IMP or other suffix to transmit the diagnostic impression(s) associated with the anatomic site. These impressions or recommendations would be associated with a single anatomic site via a common observation ID.

7.2.4.6 Device/Instrument (DEV)

When required, the instrument or device which generated an observation can be transmitted as an additional result of the study. In this case, the suffix of *OBX-3-observation identifier* is DEV. Examples include: an automated instrument in the laboratory; an imaging device and model number in radiology; or an automatic blood pressure machine on the ward. The device is specified as a coded entry in anticipation that these identifiers could be specified as codes. Initially, we expect that most of the information about devices will be transmitted as text in the second component of the CE identifier.

7.2.4.7 Serial # device/instrument (SER)

Vendor's serial number of the device which generated the observation.

7.2.4.8 Gross or general description (GDT)

The general description suffix identifies the description component of a diagnostic study. In the case of anatomic pathology, it applies to the macroscopic (gross) description of the specimen. If the description consists of multiple paragraphs, the paragraphs should be separated by repeat delimiters so that the receiving computer can display them as paragraphs. It will not be necessary to include a description segment for a report when the impression segment says it all, e.g., for normal studies or studies such as EKG, whose reports are traditionally terse.

7.2.4.9 Microscopic or Secondary description (MDT)

For most studies, a secondary description will not be needed. In the case of surgical pathology, however, the microscopic description is a separate part of the report. It describes the histology as seen through the microscope. The microscopic description will be sent in a segment with the suffix MDT in *OBX-3-observation identifier*. If the microscopic description consists of multiple paragraphs, the paragraphs should be separated by repeat delimiters so that the receiving computer can display them as paragraphs.

7.2.4.10 Technician's comment (TCM)

This is free text stored in a result segment whose *OBX-3-observation identifier* has a suffix of TCM for technician comment. It is used to record information about technical performance of the procedure, usually recorded by the technician.

7.2.4.11 Addendum note (ADT)

Use to report information that is added as an addendum after the original dictation and sent as a separate labeled section of the report.

7.2.4.12 Diagnosis (problem) onset date/time (ITM)

Use to record the date-time that a problem was first perceived to exist.

7.2.4.13 Diagnosis (problem) resolution date/time (RTM)

Use to record the date-time that a problem became inactive, i.e., the problem was cured or remitted.

7.2.4.14 Comparison study (CMS)

When the reader of a diagnostic report compares the results for the current study with those of a previous study, this suffix allows them to report the nature of the comparison study as a separate result, i.e., an OBX segment with a segment whose observation ID has a suffix of CMS. Ordinarily, this would not be required because the observation ID in the other comparison OBXs would identify the test, if any of the other comparison values were transmitted.

7.2.4.15 Comparison date/time (CMT)

When the reader of a diagnostic procedure compares the current results with a previous study, this suffix allows them to report the date-time of the previous study (time optional) as a separate result within the current report.

7.2.4.16 Comparison results (CMR)

When the reader of a diagnostic procedure compares the current results with those of a previous study on the same patient, this suffix allows them to report the results (impression) of the previous study as a discrete result within the current report.

7.2.4.17 Comparison change (CMC)

When a diagnostic service reports a comparison between the current and a previous study, this suffix is used to report the degree of change (e.g., much worse, worse, minimal worsening, no change, slightly better, better, much better, returned to normal) as a separate result within the report.

In current dictation, information about comparison is usually contained in the descriptions of the study. The provision of the comparison suffixes listed above do not imply a *requirement* to send this information as separate components. The comparison variables are only meant to be enabling. When a system would like to transmit them as discrete report components, these suffixes give them the option.

7.2.4.18 Predicted value (PRD)

When an observation has a predicted value as is the case for many spirometry tests, this suffix identifies the predicted observation as distinguished from the actual observation. The AS4 code for forced vital capacity is 94010.1 (see the HL7 Implementation Guide). The predicted forced vital capacity would be 94010.1&PRD.

7.2.4.19 Percent predicted (PPR)

This is a computed observation `= (actual observation)/(predicted observation.` For forced vital capacity the percent predicted would be identified as 94010.1&PPR.

7.2.4.20 After drug observed (AFD)

An observation might be taken before and after a drug is given. This occurs especially in Spirometry. The predose observation is identified by the base ID. The post drug measure is identified by the AFD suffix. Using the AS4 base code for the forced vital capacity the post drug result would be identified by 94010.1&AFD.

7.2.4.21 Predicted value after drug (ADP)

The post drug predicted value is identified by the suffix, ADP. Following the pattern of the above example, it would be 94010.1&ADP.

7.2.4.22 Percent predicted after drug (APP)

The percent predicted after drug is identified by applying the suffix, APP to the base code – 94010.1&APP if using the AS4 code for forced vital capacity.

7.2.4.23 Timing information (TIM)

This suffix is used only for transmitting waveform data. It is fully described in Section 7.14.2.1.

7.2.4.24 Channel definition data (CHN)

This suffix is used only for transmitting waveform data. It is fully described in Section 7.16.4.

7.2.4.25 Waveform digital data (WAS)

This suffix is used only for transmitting waveform data. It is fully described in Section 7.16.5.

7.2.4.26 Waveform annotation (ANO)

This suffix is used only for transmitting waveform data. It is fully described in Section 7.16.6.

7.2.4.27 Clinical observation codes

The recently introduced LOINC® codes (See Figure 7-2 for full information) may be more useful to many users. Code system information, including LOINC®, has been moved from Appendix 7A to the Implementation Guide.

7.2.5 Coding schemes

Various fields of data type CE which are used in segments defined both in the current chapter and other chapters, are used to transmit information about diagnoses, observation results, procedures, health outcomes, and drugs administered. Figures 7-2 and 7-3 (which were located in Chapter 2 in previous versions) list some common coding schemes for these types of information. The values in the second column of the table would be used in component 3 (and optionally, component 6) of a CE field to identify the coding scheme used.

Refer to section 7.18.1 for the contents of the *User-defined Table 0396 – Coding system*.

7.3 TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGE DEFINITIONS

The triggering events that follow are all served by the ORU (Observational report – Unsolicited) or the ORF (Observational Report Response) messages in combination with ACK and QRY. Each triggering event is listed below, along with the messages exchanged, and the segments that comprise the messages. The notation used to describe the sequence, optionality, and repeating of segments is described in Chapter 2, "Format for defining abstract messages."

7.3.1 ORU – unsolicited observation message (event R01)

The OUL message is designed to accommodate the laboratory processes of laboratory automation systems. The ORU message is still fully supported by HL7 for transmitting laboratory results to other systems.

With the type (OBX) defined in this chapter, and the OBR defined in Chapter 4, one can construct almost any clinical report as a three-level hierarchy, with the PID segment defined in Chapter 3 at the upper level, an order record (OBR) at the next level and one or more observation records (OBX) at the bottom.

One result segment (OBX) is transmitted for each component of a diagnostic report, such as an EKG or obstetrical ultrasound or electrolyte battery.

The CTD segment in this trigger is used to transmit temporary patient contact details specific to this order.

ORU^R01	**Unsolicited Observation Message**	**Chapter**
MSH	Message Header	2
{		
[		
PID	Patient Identification	3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics	3
[{NK1}]	Next of Kin/Associated Parties	3
[{NTE}]	Notes and Comments	2
[		
PV1	Patient Visit	3
[PV2]	Patient Visit - Additional Info	3
]		
]		
{		
[ORC]	Order common	4
OBR	Observations Report ID	7
{[NTE]}	Notes and comments	2
[CTD]	Contact Data	11
{		
[OBX]	Observation/Result	7
{[NTE]}	Notes and comments	2
}		
[{FT1}]	Financial Transaction	6
{[CTI]}	Clinical Trial Identification	7
}		
}		
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer	2

ACK^R01	**Acknowledgment**	**Chapter**
MSH	Message header	2
MSA	Message acknowledgment	2

Note: The ORC is permitted but not required in this message. Any information that could be included in either the ORC or the OBR must be included in the OBR on reporting. Notice also that the ORU (and the QRY) messages accommodate reports about many patients.

Many report headers (OBR) may be sent beneath each patient segment, with many separate observation segments (OBX) beneath each OBR. Note segments (NTE) may be inserted after any of the above segments. The note segment applies to the entity that immediately precedes it, i.e., the patient if it follows the PID segment, the observation if it follows the OBR segment, and the individual result if it follows the OBX segment.

7.3.2 OUL – unsolicited laboratory observation message (R21)

- This message was designed to accommodate laboratory automation systems. It permits the communication of the following kinds of information in addition to the results themselves: relation of the analysis results to a particular container with patient sample (SAC segment),
- relation of the analysis results to a particular container with QC sample and the lot and manufacturer information about this sample (SAC-SID segments),
- basic identification data (lot, manufacturer, etc.) of the reagents and other substances involved in the generation of analysis results (TCD-SID segments).

If the results are for QC specimen container, then the patient related segments (e.g., PID, PD1, PV1, PV2) are optional.

Refer to Chapter 13 *Laboratory Automation* for examples of usage.

OUL^R21^OUL_R21	Unsolicited Laboratory Observation Message	Chapter
MSH	Message Header	2
[NTE]	Notes and Comments	2
[		
PID	Patient Identification	3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics	3
[{NTE}]	Notes and Comments (for Patient ID)	2
]		
[		
PV1	Patient Visit	3
[PV2]]	Patient Visit – Additional Information	3
]		
{		
[		
SAC	Specimen Container Details	13
[SID]	Substance Identifier	13
[{OBX}]	Additional Specimen Characteristics	7
]		
[ORC]	Common Order	4
OBR	Observation	7
[{NTE}]	Notes and Comments (for Detail)	2
{		
[OBX]	Observation Result	7
[TCD]	Test Code Detail	13
{[SID]}	Substance Identifier	13
[{NTE}]	Notes and Comments	2
}		
[{CTI}]	Clinical Trial Identification	7
}		
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer	2

7.3.3 QRY/ORF - query for results of observation (events R02, R04)

The query response format options are described in chapter 5, Section 5.2.4 “Response format”.

The QRD segment is defined in Chapter 5 Section 5.10.5.3, “QRD – original style query definition segment.” The Query Result Level field of the QRD determines the amount of data requested.

The QRF segment is defined in Chapter 5, Section 5.10.5.4, “QRF – original style query filter segment.”

The subject filters contained in the QRD and QRF segments are defined by local agreement between the inquiring system and the ancillary system.

The Set ID fields in the various segments (including PID) are used to count the number of segments of one kind transmitted at one level of the hierarchy.

The CTD segment in this trigger is used to transmit temporary patient contact details specific to this order.

QRY^R02^QRY_R02	Query	Chapter
MSH	Message Header	2
QRD	Query Definition	2
QRF	Query Filter	2

ORF^R04^ORF_R04	Observational Report	Chapter
MSH	Message Header	2
MSA	Message Acknowledgment	2
QRD	Query Definition	2
[QRF]	Query Filter	2
{		
[		
PID	Patient ID	3
[{NTE}]	Notes and Comments	3
]		
{		
[ORC]	Order common	
OBR	Observation request	7
{[NTE]}	Notes and comments	2
[CTD]	Contact Data	11
{		
[OBX]	Observation/Result	7
{[NTE]}	Notes and comments	2
}		
{[CTI]}	Clinical Trial Identification	7
}		
}		
[ERR]	Error	2
[QAK]	Query Acknowledgement	5
[DSC]	Continuation Pointer	2

7.4 SEGMENTS

The full definitions of many segments required for reporting clinical observations are included in other chapters. The patient identifying segment (PID) is provided in Chapter 3. The NTE segment is in Chapter 2.

7.4.1 OBR – observation request segment

In the reporting of clinical data, the OBR serves as the report header. It identifies the observation set represented by the following atomic observations. It includes the relevant ordering information when that applies. It contains many of the attributes that usually apply to all of the included observations.

When a set of observations is ordered, the order message contains an OBR segment. However, observations can be collected and reported without an antecedent order. When observations are reported, the report message also includes one or more OBR segments. So, the OBR segment is like a turn-around document. Some fields in the OBR segment apply only to the ordering message and some to the reporting message. To those familiar with healthcare procedures, these should be obvious from their names (e.g., transcriptionist or principal result interpreter could only apply to the reporting phase). However, we have also flagged them in Figure 7-4 to indicate whether placer, filler, or both may send data in a given field.

HL7 Attribute Table – OBR – Observation Request

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	O			00237	Set ID - OBR
2	22	EI	C			00216	Placer Order Number
3	22	EI	C			00217	Filler Order Number
4	250	CE	R			00238	Universal Service Identifier
5	2	ID	X			00239	Priority - OBR
6	26	TS	X			00240	Requested Date/Time
7	26	TS	C			00241	Observation Date/Time #
8	26	TS	O			00242	Observation End Date/Time #
9	20	CQ	O			00243	Collection Volume *
10	250	XCN	O	Y		00244	Collector Identifier *
11	1	ID	O		0065	00245	Specimen Action Code *
12	250	CE	O			00246	Danger Code
13	300	ST	O			00247	Relevant Clinical Info.
14	26	TS	C			00248	Specimen Received Date/Time *
15	300	CM	O		0070	00249	Specimen Source *
16	250	XCN	O	Y		00226	Ordering Provider
17	250	XTN	O	Y/2		00250	Order Callback Phone Number
18	60	ST	O			00251	Placer Field 1
19	60	ST	O			00252	Placer Field 2
20	60	ST	O			00253	Filler Field 1 +
21	60	ST	O			00254	Filler Field 2 +
22	26	TS	C			00255	Results Rpt/Status Chng - Date/Time +
23	40	CM	O			00256	Charge to Practice +
24	10	ID	O		0074	00257	Diagnostic Serv Sect ID
25	1	ID	C		0123	00258	Result Status +
26	400	CM	O			00259	Parent Result +
27	200	TQ	O	Y		00221	Quantity/Timing
28	250	XCN	O	Y/5		00260	Result Copies To
29	200	CM	O			00261	Parent
30	20	ID	O		0124	00262	Transportation Mode
31	250	CE	O	Y		00263	Reason for Study
32	200	CM	O			00264	Principal Result Interpreter +
33	200	CM	O	Y		00265	Assistant Result Interpreter +
34	200	CM	O	Y		00266	Technician +
35	200	CM	O	Y		00267	Transcriptionist +
36	26	TS	O			00268	Scheduled Date/Time +
37	4	NM	O			01028	Number of Sample Containers *
38	250	CE	O	Y		01029	Transport Logistics of Collected Sample *
39	250	CE	O	Y		01030	Collector's Comment *
40	250	CE	O			01031	Transport Arrangement Responsibility
41	30	ID	O		0224	01032	Transport Arranged
42	1	ID	O		0225	01033	Escort Required

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
43	250	CE	O	Y		01034	Planned Patient Transport Comment
44	250	CE	O		0088	00393	Procedure Code
45	250	CE	O	Y	0340	01316	Procedure Code Modifier
46	250	CE	O	Y	0411	01474	Placer Supplemental Service Information
47	250	CE	O	Y	0411	01475	Filler Supplemental Service Information

Note: The complete description of these fields is provided below as well as in Chapter 4.

7.4.1.0 OBR field definitions

The daggered (+) items in this segment are not created by the placer known to the filler, not the placer. They are created by the filler and valued as needed when the OBR segment is returned as part of a report. Hence on a new order sent to the filler, they are not valued. There is an exception when the filler initiates the order. In that case, the filler order number is valued and the placer order number may be blank. They are valued by the filler as needed when the OBR segment is returned as part of a report.

The starred (*) fields are only relevant when an observation is associated with a specimen. These are completed by the placer when the placer obtains the specimen. They are completed by the filler when the filler obtains the specimen.

OBR-7-observation date/time and *OBR-8-observation end date/time* (flagged with #) are the physiologically relevant times. In the case of an observation on a specimen, they represent the start and end of the specimen collection. In the case of an observation obtained directly from a subject (e.g., BP, Chest X-ray), they represent the start and end time of the observation.

7.4.1.1 OBR-1 Set ID - OBR (SI) 00237

Definition: For the first order transmitted, the sequence number shall be 1; for the second order, it shall be 2; and so on.

7.4.1.2 OBR-2 Placer order number (EI) 00216

```
Components:  <entity identifier (ST)> ^ <namespace ID (IS)> ^ <universal ID (ST)> ^ <universal ID
             type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is a case of the Entity Identifier data type (See 2.8.13, “EI - Entity identifier”). The first component is a string that identifies an individual order (e.g., OBR). A limit of fifteen (15) characters is suggested but not required. It is assigned by the place (ordering application). It identifies an order uniquely among all orders from a particular ordering application. The second through fourth components contain the application ID of the placing application in the same form as the HD data type (Section 2.8.18, “HD - Hierarchic designator”). The second component, namespace ID, is a user-defined coded value that will be uniquely associated with an application. A limit of six (6) characters is suggested but not required. A given institution or group of intercommunicating institutions should establish a unique list of applications that may be potential placers and fillers and assign unique application IDs. The components are separated by component delimiters.

There are three situations in which the true placer is somewhat arbitrary (and thus not unique):

a) in *ORC-1-order control* value of RO, following an RU replacement;

b) in *ORC-1-order control* value of CH (child orders); and

c) in *ORC-1-order control* value of SN (send number).

See the Table Notes under *ORC-1-order control* for the details of how the *ORC-2-placer order number* is assigned in these cases.

A given institution or group of intercommunicating institutions should establish a list of applications that may be potential placers and fillers of orders and assign each a unique application ID. The application ID list becomes one of the institution's master dictionary lists that is documented in Chapter 8. Since third-party applications (those other than the placer and filler of an order) can send and receive ORM and ORR messages, the placer application ID in this field may not be the same as any sending and receiving application on the network (as identified in the MSH segment).

ORC-2-placer order number is the same as *OBR-2-placer order number*. If the placer order number is not present in the ORC, it must be present in the associated OBR and vice versa. If both fields, *ORC-2-placer order number* and *OBR-2-placer order number,* are valued, they must contain the same value. When results are transmitted in an ORU message, an ORC is not required, and the identifying placer order number must be present in the OBR segments.

These rules apply to the few other fields that are present in both ORC and OBR for upward compatibility (e.g., quantity/timing, parent numbers, ordering provider, and ordering call back numbers).

7.4.1.3 OBR-3 Filler order number (EI) 00217

```
Components:  <entity identifier (ST)> ^ <namespace ID (IS)> ^ <universal ID (ST)> ^ <universal ID
             type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the order number associated with the filling application. It is a case of the Entity Identifier data type (Section 2.8.13, "EI - Entity Identifier"). Its first component is a string that identifies an order detail segment (e.g., OBR). A limit of fifteen (15) characters is suggested but not required. It is assigned by the order filler (receiving) application. This string must uniquely identify the order (as specified in the order detail segment) from other orders in a particular filling application (e.g., clinical laboratory). This uniqueness must persist over time.

The second through fourth components contain the filler application ID, in the form of the HD data type (see Section 2.8.18, "HD - hierarchic designator"). The second component is a user-defined coded value that uniquely defines the application from other applications on the network. A limit of six (6) characters is suggested but not required. The second component of the filler order number always identifies the actual filler of an order.

A given institution or group of intercommunicating institutions should establish a list of applications that may be potential placers and fillers of orders and assign each a unique application ID. The application ID list becomes one of the institution's master dictionary lists that is documented in Chapter 8. Since third-party applications (those other than the placer and filler of an order) can send and receive ORM and ORR messages, the filler application ID in this field may not be the same as any sending and receiving application on the network (as identified in the MSH segment).

ORC-3-filler order number is the same as *OBR-3-filler order number*. If the filler order number is not present in the ORC, it must be present in the associated OBR. (This rule is the same for other identical fields in the ORC and OBR and promotes upward and ASTM compatibility.) This is particularly important when results are transmitted in an ORU message. In this case, the ORC is not required and the identifying filler order number must be present in the OBR segments.

The *filler order number (OBR-3 or ORC-3)* also uniquely identifies an order and its associated observations. For example, suppose that an institution collects observations from several ancillary applications into a common database and this common database is queried by yet another application for

observations. In this case, the filler order number and placer order number transmitted by the common database application would be that of the original filler and placer, respectively, rather than a new one assigned by the common database application.

Similarly, if a third-party application, not the filler or placer, of an order were authorized to modify the status of an order (say, cancel it), the third-party application would send the filler an ORM message containing an ORC segment with *ORC-1-order control* equal to "CA" and containing the original placer order number and filler order number, rather than assign either itself.

7.4.1.4 OBR-4 Universal service identifier (CE) 00238

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field is the identifier code for the requested observation/test/battery. This can be based on local and/or "universal" codes. We recommend the "universal" procedure identifier. The structure of this CE data type is described in the control section.

7.4.1.5 OBR-5 Priority - OBR (ID) 00239

Definition: ***This field has been retained for backward compatibility only***. It is not used. Previously priority (e.g., STAT, ASAP), but that information is carried as the sixth component of *OBR-27-quantity/timing*.

7.4.1.6 OBR-6 Requested date/time (TS) 00240

Definition: ***This field has been retained for backward compatibility only***. This is not used. Previously requested date/time. That information is now carried in the fourth component of the *OBR-27-quantity/timing*.

7.4.1.7 OBR-7 Observation date/time (TS) 00241

Definition: This field is the clinically relevant date/time of the observation. In the case of observations taken directly from a subject, it is the actual date and time the observation was obtained. In the case of a specimen-associated study, this field shall represent the date and time the specimen was collected or obtained. (This is a results-only field except when the placer or a third party has already drawn the specimen.) This field is conditionally required. When the OBR is transmitted as part of a report message, the field **must** be filled in. If it is transmitted as part of a request **and** a sample has been sent along as part of the request, this field must be filled in because this specimen time is the physiologically relevant date-time of the observation.

7.4.1.8 OBR-8 Observation end date/time (TS) 00242

Definition: This field is the end date and time of a study or timed specimen collection. If an observation takes place over a substantial period of time, it will indicate when the observation period ended. For observations made at a point in time, it will be null. This is a results field except when the placer or a party other than the filler has already drawn the specimen.

7.4.1.9 OBR-9 Collection volume (CQ) 00243

```
Components:  <quantity (NM)> ^ <units (CE)>

Subcomponents of units: <identifier (ST)> & <test (ST)> & <name of coding system (IS)> & <alternate
            identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> & <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: For laboratory tests, the collection volume is the volume of a specimen. The default unit is ML. Specifically, units should be expressed in the ISO Standard unit abbreviations (ISO-2955, 1977). This is a results-only field except when the placer or a party has already drawn the specimen. (See Chapter 7 for full details about units.)

7.4.1.10 OBR-10 Collector identifier (XCN) 00244

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, use instead of the CN data type.  <ID number (ST)> ^ <family
            name (FN)> ^ <given name (ST)> ^ <second or further given names or initials thereof
            (ST)> ^ <suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <degree (e.g., MD)
            (IS)> ^ <source table (IS)> ^ <assigning authority (HD)> ^ <name type code (ID)>  ^
            <identifier check digit (ST)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)>
            ^ <identifier type code (IS)> ^ <assigning facility (HD)> ^ <name representation code
            (ID)> ^ <name context (CE)> ^ <name validity range (DR)> ^ < name assembly order (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type
            (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning facility ID:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID
            type (ID)>
```

Definition: When a specimen is required for the study, this field will identify the person, department, or facility that collected the specimen. Either name or ID code, or both, may be present.

7.4.1.11 OBR-11 Specimen action code (ID) 00245

Definition: This field is the action to be taken with respect to the specimens that accompany or precede this order. The purpose of this field is to further qualify (when appropriate) the general action indicated by the order control code contained in the accompanying ORC segment. For example, when a new order (ORC - “NW”) is sent to the lab, this field would be used to tell the lab whether or not to collect the specimen (“L” or “O”). Refer to *HL7 Table 0065 - Specimen action code* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0065 - Specimen action code

Value	Description
A	Add ordered tests to the existing specimen
G	Generated order; reflex order
L	Lab to obtain specimen from patient
O	Specimen obtained by service other than Lab
P	Pending specimen; Order sent prior to delivery
R	Revised order
S	Schedule the tests specified below

7.4.1.12 OBR-12 Danger code (CE) 00246

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field is the code and/or text indicating any known or suspected patient or specimen hazards, e.g., patient with active tuberculosis or blood from a hepatitis patient. Either code and/or text may be absent. However, the code is always placed in the first component position and any free text in the second component. Thus, free text without a code must be preceded by a component delimiter.

7.4.1.13 OBR-13 Relevant clinical information (ST) 00247

Definition: This field contains any additional clinical information about the patient or specimen. This field is used to report the suspected diagnosis and clinical findings on requests for interpreted diagnostic studies. Examples include reporting the amount of inspired carbon dioxide for blood gasses, the point in the menstrual cycle for cervical pap tests, and other conditions that influence test interpretations. For some orders this information may be sent on a more structured form as a series of OBX segments (see Chapter 7) that immediately follow the order segment.

7.4.1.14 OBR-14 Specimen received date/time (TS) 00248

Definition: For observations requiring a specimen, the specimen received date/time is the actual login time at the diagnostic service. This field must contain a value when the order is accompanied by a specimen, or when the observation required a specimen **and** the message is a report.

7.4.1.15 OBR-15 Specimen source (CM) 00249

```
Components:  <specimen source name or code (CE)> ^ <additives (TX)> ^ <freetext (TX)> ^ <body site
             (CE)> ^ <site modifier (CE)> ^ <collection method modifier code (CE)>

Subcomponents of specimen source name or doe: <identifier (ST)> & <test (ST)> & <name of coding
             system (IS)> & <alternate identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> & <name of alternate
             coding system (ST)>

Subcomponents of body site: <identifier (ST)> & <test (ST)> & <name of coding system (IS)> &
             <alternate identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> & <name of alternate coding system
             (ST)>

Subcomponents of site modifier: <identifier (ST)> & <test (ST)> & <name of coding system (IS)> &
             <alternate identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> & <name of alternate coding system
             (ST)>

Subcomponents of collection method modifier code: <identifier (ST)> & <test (ST)> & <name of coding
             system (IS)> & <alternate identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> & <name of alternate
             coding system (ST)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the site where the specimen should be obtained or where the service should be performed.

Veterinary medicine may choose the tables supported for the components of this field as decided by their industry.

The first component contains the specimen source name or code (as a CE data type component). (Even in the case of observations whose name implies the source, a source may be required, e.g., blood culture – heart blood.) Refer *to HL7 table 0070 - Specimen source codes* for valid entries.

The second component should include free text additives to the specimen such as Heparin, EDTA, or Oxlate, when applicable.

The third is a free text component describing the method of collection when that information is a part of the order. When the method of collection is logically an observation result, it should be included as a result segment.

The fourth component specifies the body site from which the specimen was obtained, and the fifth is the site modifier. For example, the site could be antecubital fossa, and the site modifier "right." The components of the CE fields become subcomponents.

Refer to section 7.18.2 for the contents of *HL7 Table 0163 – Body site*.

The fifth component indicates whether the specimen is frozen as part of the collection method. Suggested values are F (Frozen); R (Refrigerated). If the component is blank, the specimen is assumed to be at room temperature.

Refer to section 7.18.3 for the contents of *HL7 Table 0070 – Specimen source codes*.

7.4.1.16 OBR-16 Ordering provider (XCN) 00226

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, use instead of the CN data type.  <ID number (ST)> ^ <family
            name (FN)> ^ <given name (ST)> ^ <second or further given names or initials thereof
            (ST)> ^ <suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <degree (e.g., MD)
            (IS)> ^ <source table (IS)> ^ <assigning authority (HD)> ^ <name type code (ID)>  ^
            <identifier check digit (ST)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)>
            ^ <identifier type code (IS)> ^ <assigning facility (HD)> ^ <name representation code
            (ID)> ^ <name context (CE)> ^ <name validity range (DR)> ^ < name assembly order (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type
            (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning facility ID:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID
            type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the provider who ordered the test. Either the ID code or the name, or both, may be present. This is the same as *ORC-12-Ordering provider*.

7.4.1.17 OBR-17 Order callback phone number (XTN) 00250

```
Components:  [NNN] [(999)]999-9999 [X99999] [B99999] [C any text] ^ <telecommunication use code (ID)>
             ^ <telecommunication equipment type (ID)> ^ <email address (ST)> ^ <country code (NM)> ^
             <area/city code (NM)> ^ <phone number (NM)> ^ <extension (NM)> ^ <any text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field is the telephone number for reporting a status or a result using the standard format with extension and/or beeper number when applicable.

7.4.1.18 OBR-18 Placer field 1 (ST) 00251

Definition: This field is user field #1. Text sent by the placer will be returned with the results.

7.4.1.19 OBR-19 Placer field 2 (ST) 00252

Definition: This field is similar to placer field #1.

7.4.1.20 OBR-20 Filler field 1 (ST) 00253

Definition: This field is definable for any use by the filler (diagnostic service).

7.4.1.21 OBR-21 Filler field 2 (ST) 00254

Definition: This field is similar to filler field #1.

7.4.1.22 OBR-22 Results rpt/status chng - date/time (TS) 00255

Definition: This field specifies the date/time results reported or status changed. This field is used to indicate the date and time that the results are composed into a report and released, or that a status, as defined in *ORC-5-order status*, is entered or changed. (This is a results field only.) When other applications (such as office or clinical database applications) query the laboratory application for un-transmitted results, the information in this field may be used to control processing on the communications link. Usually, the ordering service would want only those results for which the reporting date/time is greater than the date/time the inquiring application last received results.

7.4.1.23 OBR-23 Charge to practice (CM) 00256

```
Components:  <dollar amount (MO)> ^ <charge code (CE)>

Subcomponents of dollar amount:  <quantity (NM)> & <denomination (ID)>

Subcomponents of charge code: <identifier (ST)> & <test (ST)> & <name of coding system (IS)> &
             <alternate identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> & <name of alternate coding system
             (IS)>
```

Definition: This field is the charge to the ordering entity for the studies performed when applicable. The first component is a dollar amount when known by the filler. The second is a charge code when known by the filler (results only).

7.4.1.24 OBR-24 Diagnostic serv sect ID (ID) 00257

Definition: This field is the section of the diagnostic service where the observation was performed. If the study was performed by an outside service, the identification of that service should be recorded here. Refer to *HL7 Table 0074 - Diagnostic service section ID* for valid entries.

HL7 Table 0074 - Diagnostic service section ID

Value	Description
AU	Audiology
BG	Blood gases
BLB	Blood bank
CUS	Cardiac Ultrasound
CTH	Cardiac catheterization
CT	CAT scan
CH	Chemistry
CP	Cytopathology
EC	Electrocardiac (e.g., EKG, EEC, Holter)
EN	Electroneuro (EEG, EMG,EP,PSG)
HM	Hematology

Value	Description
ICU	Bedside ICU Monitoring
IMG	Diagnostic Imaging
IMM	Immunology
LAB	Laboratory
MB	Microbiology
MCB	Mycobacteriology
MYC	Mycology
NMS	Nuclear medicine scan
NMR	Nuclear magnetic resonance
NRS	Nursing service measures
OUS	OB Ultrasound
OT	Occupational Therapy
OTH	Other
OSL	Outside Lab
PAR	Parasitology
PAT	Pathology (gross & histopath, not surgical)
PHR	Pharmacy
PT	Physical Therapy
PHY	Physician (Hx. Dx, admission note, etc.)
PF	Pulmonary function
RAD	Radiology
RX	Radiograph
RUS	Radiology ultrasound
RC	Respiratory Care (therapy)
RT	Radiation therapy
SR	Serology
SP	Surgical Pathology
TX	Toxicology
URN	Urinalysis
VUS	Vascular Ultrasound
VR	Virology
XRC	Cineradiograph

7.4.1.25 OBR-25 Result status (ID) 00258

Definition: This field is the status of results for this order. This conditional field is required whenever the OBR is contained in a report message. It is not required as part of an initial order.

There are two methods of sending status information. If the status is that of the entire order, use *ORC-15-order effective date/time* and *ORC-5-order status*. If the status pertains to the order detail segment, use *OBR-25-result status* and *OBR-22-results report/status change - date/time*. If both are present, the OBR values override the ORC values.

This field would typically be used in a response to an order status query where the level of detail requested does not include the OBX segments. When the individual status of each result is necessary, *OBX-11-observ result status* may be used. Refer to *HL7 Table 0123 - Result status* for valid entries.

HL7 Table 0123 - Result status

Value	Description
O	Order received; specimen not yet received
I	No results available; specimen received, procedure incomplete
S	No results available; procedure scheduled, but not done
A	Some, but not all, results available
P	Preliminary: A verified early result is available, final results not yet obtained
C	Correction to results
R	Results stored; not yet verified
F	Final results; results stored and verified. Can only be changed with a corrected result.
X	No results available; Order canceled.
Y	No order on record for this test. (Used only on queries)
Z	No record of this patient. (Used only on queries)

7.4.1.26 OBR-26 Parent result (CM) 00259

```
Components:  <OBX-3-observation identifier of parent result (CE)> ^ <OBX-4-sub-ID of parent result
             (ST)> ^ <part of OBX-5 observation result from parent (TX) see discussion>

Subcomponents of OBX-3-observation identifier or parent result: <identifier (ST)> & <test (ST)> &
             <name of coding system (IS)> & <alternate identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> &
             <name of alternate coding system (ST)>
```

Definition: This field is defined to make it available for other types of linkages (e.g., toxicology). This important information, together with the information in *OBR-29-parent*, uniquely identifies the parent result's OBX segment related to this order. The value of this OBX segment in the parent result is the organism or chemical species about which this battery reports. For example, if the current battery is an antimicrobial susceptibility, the parent result's identified OBX contains a result which identifies the organism on which the susceptibility were run. This indirect linkage is preferred because the name of the organism in the parent result may undergo several preliminary values prior to finalization.

The third component may be used to record the name of the microorganism identified by the parent result directly. The organism in this case should be identified exactly as it is in the parent culture.

We emphasize that this field does not take the entire result field from the parent. It is meant only for the text name of the organism or chemical subspecies identified. This field is included only to provide a method for linking back to the parent result for those systems which could not generate unambiguous Observation IDs and sub-IDs.

This field is present only when the parent result is identified by *OBR-29-parent* and the parent spawn child orders for each of many results. (See Chapter 7 for more details about this linkage.)

A second mode of conveying this information is to use a standard observation result segment (OBX). If more than one organism is present, *OBX-4-observation subID* is used to distinguish them. In this case, the first OBX with subID N will contain a value identifying the Nth microorganism, and each additional OBX with subID N will contain susceptibility values for a given antimicrobial test on this organism.

7.4.1.27 OBR-27 Quantity/timing (TQ) 00221

```
Components:  <quantity (CQ)> ^ <interval (CM)> ^ <duration> ^ <start date/time (TS)> ^ <end date/time
             (TS)> ^ <priority (ID)> ^ <condition (ST)> ^ <text (TX)> ^ <conjunction (ID)> ^ <order
             sequencing> ^ <occurrence duration (CE)> ^ <total occurrences (NM)>
```

Definition: This field contains information about how many services to perform at one service time and how often the service times are repeated, and to fix duration of the request. See Section 4.2, "Quantity/Timing (TQ) Definition."

ORC-7-quantity/timing is the same as *OBR-27-quantity/timing*. If the ORC-7 and OBR-27 are both valued, then both should be valued exactly the same. If the quantity/timing is not present in the ORC, it must be present in the associated OBR. (This rule is the same for other identical fields in the ORC and OBR and promotes upward and ASTM compatibility.) This is particularly important when results are transmitted in an ORU message. In this case, the ORC is not required and the identifying filler order number must be present in the OBR segments.

For example, if an OBR segment describes a unit of blood, this field might request that three (3) such units be given on successive mornings. In this case *ORC-7-quantity/timing* would be "1^XQAM^X3". *ORC-7-quantity/timing* is the same as *OBR-27-quantity/timing*.

To send information about "collection time", use the 'text' component of the TQ data type in either the ORC-7 or OBR-27. Use the Note segment (NTE) to send 'special instructions' information for a test/service (e.g., draw specimen from left arm).

7.4.1.28 OBR-28 Result copies to (XCN) 00260

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, use instead of the CN data type.  <ID number (ST)> ^ <family
             name (FN)> ^ <given name (ST)> ^ <second or further given names or initials thereof
             (ST)> ^ <suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <degree (e.g., MD)
             (IS)> ^ <source table (IS)> ^ <assigning authority (HD)> ^ <name type code (ID)>  ^
             <identifier check digit (ST)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)>
             ^ <identifier type code (IS)> ^ <assigning facility (HD)> ^ <name representation code
             (ID)> ^ <name context (CE)> ^ <name validity range (DR)> ^ < name assembly order (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type
             (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning facility ID:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID
             type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field is the people who are to receive copies of the results. By local convention, either the ID number or the name may be absent.

7.4.1.29 OBR-29 Parent (CM) 00261

```
Components:  <parent's placer order number (EI)> ^ <parent's filler order number (EI)>
```

```
Subcomponents of parent's placer order number:  <entity identifier (ST)> & <namespace ID (IS)> &
            <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type (IS)>

Subcomponents of parent's filler order number:  <entity identifier (ST)> & < <namespace ID (IS)> &
            <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type (IS)>
```

Definition: This field is identical to *ORC-8-parent*. This field relates a child to its parent when a parent/child relationship exists. For example, observations that are spawned by previous observations, e.g., antimicrobial susceptibilities spawned by blood cultures, need to record the parent (blood culture) filler order number here. The parent/child mechanism is described under the order control field notes (see Segment ORC field notes in Section 4.3.1.1.1, "Table notes for order control codes of ORC." It is required when the order is a child.

Parent is a two-component field. The first component contains the parent's placer order number. The second component is optional and contains the parent's filler order number. The components of the placer order number and the filler order number are transmitted in subcomponents of the two components of this field.

7.4.1.30 OBR-30 Transportation mode (ID) 00262

Definition: This field identifies how (or whether) to transport a patient, when applicable. Refer to *HL7 Table 0124 - Transportation mode* for valid codes.

HR7 Table 0124 - Transportation mode

Value	Description
CART	Cart - patient travels on cart or gurney
PORT	The examining device goes to patient's location
WALK	Patient walks to diagnostic service
WHLC	Wheelchair

7.4.1.31 OBR-31 Reason for study (CE) 00263

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field is the code or text using the conventions for coded fields given in Chapter 2, Control. This is required for some studies to obtain proper reimbursement.

7.4.1.32 OBR-32 Principal result interpreter (CM) 00264

```
Components:  <name (CN)> ^ <start date/time (TS)> ^ <end date/time (TS)> ^ <point of care (IS)> ^
             <room (IS)> ^ <bed (IS)> ^ <facility (HD)> ^ <location status (IS)> ^ <patient location
             type (IS)> ^ <building (IS)> ^ <floor (IS)>

Subcomponents of name:  <ID number (ST)> & <family name (ST)> & <given name (ST)> & <middle initial
            or name (ST)> & <suffix (e.g., JR. III) (ST)> & <prefix (e.g., DR)> & <degree (e.g., MD)
            (ST)> & <source table (IS)> & <assigning authority (HD)>

Subcomponents of facility:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the physician or other clinician who interpreted the observation and is responsible for the report content.

7.4.1.33 OBR-33 Assistant result interpreter (CM) 00265

```
Components:  <name (CN)> ^ <start date/time (TS)> ^ <end date/time (TS)> ^ <point of care (IS)> ^
             <room (IS)> ^ <bed (IS)> ^ <facility (HD)> ^ <location status (IS)> ^ <patient location
             type (IS)> ^ <building (IS)> ^ <floor (IS)>

Subcomponents of name:  <ID number (ST)> & <family name (ST)> & <given name (ST)> & <middle initial
             or name (ST)> & <suffix (e.g., JR. III) (ST)> & <prefix (e.g., DR)> & <degree (e.g., MD)
             (ST)> & <source table (IS)> & <assigning authority (HD)>

Subcomponents of facility:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the clinical observer who assisted with the interpretation of this study.

7.4.1.34 OBR-34 Technician (CM) 00266

```
Components:  <name (CN)> ^ <start date/time (TS)> ^ <end date/time (TS)> ^ <point of care (IS)> ^
             <room (IS)> ^ <bed (IS)> ^ <facility (HD)> ^ <location status (IS)> ^ <patient location
             type (IS)> ^ <building (IS)> ^ <floor (IS)>

Subcomponents of name:  <ID number (ST)> & <family name (ST)> & <given name (ST)> & <middle initial
             or name (ST)> & <suffix (e.g., JR. III) (ST)> & <prefix (e.g., DR)> & <degree (e.g., MD)
             (ST)> & <source table (IS)> & <assigning authority (HD)>

Subcomponents of facility:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the performing technician.

7.4.1.35 OBR-35 Transcriptionist (CM) 00267

```
Components:  <name (CN)> ^ <start date/time (TS)> ^ <end date/time (TS)> ^ <point of care (IS)> ^
             <room (IS)> ^ <bed (IS)> ^ <facility (HD)> ^ <location status (IS)> ^ <patient location
             type (IS)> ^ <building (IS)> ^ <floor (IS)>

Subcomponents of name:  <ID number (ST)> & <family name (ST)> & <given name (ST)> & <middle initial
             or name (ST)> & <suffix (e.g., JR. III) (ST)> & <prefix (e.g., DR)> & <degree (e.g., MD)
             (ST)> & <source table (IS)> & <assigning authority (HD)>

Subcomponents of facility:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the report transcriber.

7.4.1.36 OBR-36 Scheduled - date/time (TS) 00268

Definition: This field is the date/time the filler scheduled an observation, when applicable (e.g., action code in *OBR-11-specimen action code* = "S"). This is a result of a request to schedule a particular test and provides a way to inform the Placer of the date/time a study is scheduled (result only).

7.4.1.37 OBR-37 Number of sample containers (NM) 01028

Definition: This field identifies the number of containers for a given sample. For sample receipt verification purposes; may be different from the total number of samples which accompany the order.

7.4.1.38 OBR-38 Transport logistics of collected sample (CE) 01029

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
             (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```


Definition: This field is the means by which a sample reaches the diagnostic service provider. This information is to aid the lab in scheduling or interpretation of results. Possible answers: routine transport van, public postal service, etc. If coded, requires a user-defined table.

7.4.1.39 OBR-39 Collector's comment (CE) 01030

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field is for reporting additional comments related to the sample. If coded, requires a user-defined table. If only free text is reported, it is placed in the second component with a null in the first component, e.g., ^difficult clotting after venipuncture and ecchymosis.

7.4.1.40 OBR-40 Transport arrangement responsibility (CE) 01031

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field is an indicator of who is responsible for arranging transport to the planned diagnostic service. Examples: Requester, Provider, Patient. If coded, requires a user-defined table.

7.4.1.41 OBR-41 Transport arranged (ID) 01032

Definition: This field is an indicator of whether transport arrangements are known to have been made. *Refer to HL7 Table 0224 - Transport arranged* for valid codes.

HL7 Table 0224 - Transport arranged

Value	Description
A	Arranged
N	Not Arranged
U	Unknown

7.4.1.42 OBR-42 Escort required (ID) 01033

Definition: This field is an indicator that the patient needs to be escorted to the diagnostic service department. Note: The nature of the escort requirements should be stated in the *OBR-43-planned patient transport comment* field. See *HL7 Table 0225 - Escort required* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0225 - Escort required

Value	Description
R	Required
N	Not Required
U	Unknown

7.4.1.43 OBR-43 Planned patient transport comment (CE) 01034

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field is the code or free text comments on special requirements for the transport of the patient to the diagnostic service department. If coded, requires a user-defined table.

7.4.1.44 OBR-44 Procedure code (CE) 00393

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains a unique identifier assigned to the procedure, if any, associated with the Universal Service ID reported in field 4. *User-defined Table 0088 - Procedure code* is used as the HL7 identifier for the user-defined table of values for this field. This field is a CE data type for compatibility with clinical and ancillary systems. This field will usually contain the HCPCS code associated with the order.

7.4.1.45 OBR-45 Procedure code modifier (CE) 01316

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains the procedure code modifier to the procedure code reported in field 44, when applicable. Procedure code modifiers are defined by regulatory agencies such as HCFA and the AMA. Multiple modifiers may be reported. *User-defined Table 0088 - Procedure code* is used as the HL7 identifier for the user-defined table of values for this field.

7.4.1.46 OBR-46 Placer supplemental service information (CE) 01474

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains supplemental service information sent from the placer system to the filler system for the universal procedure code reported in *OBR-4 Universal Service ID*. This field will be used to provide ordering information detail that is not available in other, specific fields in the OBR segment. Multiple supplemental service information elements may be reported. Refer to *User-defined table 0411 - Supplemental service information values* for suggested values.

This field can be used to describe details such as whether study is to be done on the right or left, for example where the study is of the arm and the order master file does not distinguish right from left or whether the study is to be done with or without contrast (when the order master file does not make such distinctions).

7.4.1.47 OBR-47 Filler supplemental service information (CE) 01475

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains supplemental service information sent from the filler system to the placer system for the procedure code reported in *OBR-4 Universal Service ID.* This field will be used to report ordering information details that is not available in other, specific fields in the OBR segment. Typically it will reflect the same information as was sent to the filler system in *OBR-46-Placer supplemental* information unless the order was modified in which case the filler system will report what was actually performed using this field. Multiple supplemental service information elements may be reported. Refer to *User-defined Table 0411 - Supplemental service information values* for suggested values.

This field can be used to describe details such as whether study is to be done on the right or left, for example where the study is of the arm and the order master file does not distinguish right from left or whether the study is to be done with or without contrast (when the order master file does not make such distinctions).

User-defined Table 0411 - Supplemental service information values

Value	Description
1ST	First
2ND	Second
3RD	Third
4TH	Fourth
5TH	Fifth
ANT	Anterior
A/P	Anterior/Posterior
BLT	Bilateral
DEC	Decubitus
DST	Distal
LAT	Lateral
LFT	Left
LLQ	Left Lower Quadrant
LOW	Lower
LUQ	Left Upper Quadrant
MED	Medial
OR	Operating Room
PED	Pediatric
POS	Posterior
PRT	Portable
PRX	Proximal
REC	Recumbent
RLQ	Right Lower Quadrant
RGH	Right
RUQ	Right Upper Quadrant
UPP	Upper
UPR	Upright
WCT	With Contrast
WOC	Without Contrast
WSD	With Sedation

Individual implementations may extend this table using other appropriate vocabularies.

7.4.2 OBX - observation/result segment

The OBX segment is used to transmit a single observation or observation fragment. It represents the smallest indivisible unit of a report. Its structure is summarized in Figure 7-5.

Its principal mission is to carry information about observations in report messages. But the OBX can also be part of an observation order (see Section 4.2, "Order Message Definitions"). In this case, the OBX carries clinical information needed by the filler to interpret the observation the filler makes. For example, an OBX is needed to report the inspired oxygen on an order for a blood oxygen to a blood gas lab, or to report the menstrual phase information which should be included on an order for a pap smear to a cytology lab. Appendix 7A includes codes for identifying many of pieces of information needed by observation producing services to properly interpret a test result. OBX is also found in other HL7 messages that need to include patient clinical information.

HL7 Attribute Table – OBX – Observation/Result

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	O			00569	Set ID - OBX
2	2	ID	C		0125	00570	Value Type
3	250	CE	R			00571	Observation Identifier
4	20	ST	C			00572	Observation Sub-ID
5	65536[1]	*	C	Y[2]		00573	Observation Value
6	250	CE	O			00574	Units
7	60	ST	O			00575	References Range
8	5	IS	O	Y/5	0078	00576	Abnormal Flags
9	5	NM	O			00577	Probability
10	2	ID	O	Y	0080	00578	Nature of Abnormal Test
11	1	ID	R		0085	00579	Observation Result Status
12	26	TS	O			00580	Date Last Observation Normal Value
13	20	ST	O			00581	User Defined Access Checks
14	26	TS	O			00582	Date/Time of the Observation
15	250	CE	O			00583	Producer's ID
16	250	XCN	O	Y		00584	Responsible Observer
17	250	CE	O	Y		00936	Observation Method
18	22	EI	O	Y		01479	Equipment Instance Identifier
19	26	TS	O			01480	Date/Time of the Analysis

7.4.2.0 OBX field definitions

7.4.2.1 OBX-1 Set ID - OBX (SI) 00569

Definition: This field contains the sequence number. For compatibility with ASTM.

---

[1] The length of the observation field is variable, depending upon value type. See *OBX-2 value type*.

[2] May repeat for multipart, single answer results with appropriate data types, e.g., CE, TX, and FT data types.

7.4.2.2 OBX-2 Value type (ID) 00570

Definition: This field contains the format of the observation value in OBX. It must be valued if *OBX-11-Observ result status* is not valued with an 'X". If the value is CE then the result must be a coded entry. When the value type is TX or FT then the results are bulk text. The valid values for the value type of an observation are listed in *HL7 Table 0125 - Value type*.

The observation value must be represented according to the format for the data type defined in Chapter 2, Section 2.9, "Data Types." For example, a PN consists of 6 components, separated by component delimiters.

Although NM is a valid type, observations which are usually reported as numbers will sometimes have the string (ST) data type because non-numeric characters are often reported as part of the result, e.g., >300 to indicate the result was off-scale for the instrument. In the example, ">300", ">" is a symbol and the digits are considered a numeric value. However, this usage of the ST type should be discouraged since the SN (structured numeric) data type now accommodates such reporting and, in addition, permits the receiving system to interpret the magnitude.

All HL7 data types are valid, and are included in Table 0125 except CM, CQ, SI, and ID. For a CM definition to have meaning, the specifics about the CM must be included in the field definition. *OBX-5-observation value* is a general field definition that is influenced by the data type *OBX-3*, so CMs are undefined in this context. CQ is invalid because units for *OBX-5-observation value* are always specified explicitly in an OBX segment with *OBX-6 units*. SI is invalid because it only applied to HL7 message segments, and ID because it requires a constant field definition.

The RP value (reference pointer) must be used if the actual observation value is not sent in OBX but exists somewhere else. For example, if the observation consists of an image (document or medical), the image itself cannot be sent in OBX. The sending system may in that case opt to send a reference pointer. The receiving system can use this reference pointer whenever it needs access to the actual image through other interface standards, e.g., DICOM, or through appropriate data base servers.

HL7 Table 0125 - Value type

Value	Description
AD	Address
CE	Coded Entry
CF	Coded Element With Formatted Values
CK	Composite ID With Check Digit
CN	Composite ID And Name
CP	Composite Price
CX	Extended Composite ID With Check Digit
DT	Date
ED	Encapsulated Data
FT	Formatted Text (Display)
MO	Money
NM	Numeric
PN	Person Name

Value	Description
RP	Reference Pointer
SN	Structured Numeric
ST	String Data.
TM	Time
TN	Telephone Number
TS	Time Stamp (Date & Time)
TX	Text Data (Display)
XAD	Extended Address
XCN	Extended Composite Name And Number For Persons
XON	Extended Composite Name And Number For Organizations
XPN	Extended Person Name
XTN	Extended Telecommunications Number

The full definition of these data types is given in Chapter 2, Section 2.9, "Data Types." The structured numeric (SN) data type, new to version 2.3, provides for reporting ranges (e.g., 3-5 or 10-20), titres (e.g., 1:10), and out-of-range indicators (e.g., >50) in a structured and computer interpretable way.

We allow the FT data type in the OBX segment but its use is discouraged. Formatted text usually implies a meaningful structure e.g., a list of three independent diagnoses reported on different lines. But ideally, the structure in three independent diagnostic statements would be reported as three separate OBX segments.

TX should **not** be used except to send large amounts of text. In the TX data type, the repeat delimiter can only be used to identify paragraph breaks. Use ST to send short, and possibly encodable, text strings.

7.4.2.3 OBX-3 Observation identifier (CE) 00571

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains a unique identifier for the observation. The format is that of the Coded Element (CE). Example: 8625-6^P-R interval^LN.

In most systems the identifier will **point** to a master observation table that will provide other attributes of the observation that may be used by the receiving system to process the observations it receives. A set of message segments for transmitting such master observation tables is described in Chapter 8. The relation of an observation ID to a master observation table is analogous to the relationship between a charge code (in a billing record) and the charge master.

When local codes are used as the first identifier in this field we strongly encourage sending a universal identifier as well to permit receivers to equivalence results from different providers of the same service (e.g., a hospital lab and commercial lab that provides serum potassium to a nursing home). LOINC® is an HL7 approved code system for the Observation identifier. It covers observations and measurements, such as laboratory tests, physical findings, radiology studies, and claims attachments and can be obtained from www.regenstrief.org/loinc/loinc.htm. One possible **universal** identifier is LOINC® codes for laboratory and clinical measurements (see *User-defined Table 0396* and the HL7 www list server) and Appendix X2 of ASTM E1467 for neurophysiology tests.

7.4.2.4 OBX-4 Observation sub-ID (ST) 00572

Definition: This field is used to distinguish between multiple OBX segments with the same observation ID organized under one OBR. For example, a chest X-ray report might include three separate diagnostic impressions. The standard requires three OBX segments, one for each impression. By putting a 1 in the Sub-ID of the first of these OBX segments, 2 in the second, and 3 in the third, we can uniquely identify each OBX segment for editing or replacement.

The sub-identifier is also used to group related components in reports such as surgical pathology. It is traditional for surgical pathology reports to include all the tissues taken from one surgical procedure in one report. Consider, for example, a single surgical pathology report that describes the examination of gallbladder and appendix tissue. This report would be transmitted roughly as shown in Figure 7-2.

Figure 7-2. Example of sub-identifier usage

```
OBR|1||1234^LAB|88304&SURG PATH REPORT|...<cr>
OBX|1|CE|88304&ANT|1|T57000^GALLBLADDER^SNM|...<cr>
OBX|2|TX|88304&GDT|1|THIS IS A NORMAL GALLBLADDER|...<cr>
OBX|3|TX|88304&MDT|1|MICROSCOPIC EXAM SHOWS HISTOLOGICALLY
   NORMAL GALLBLADDER TISSUE|...<cr>
OBX|4|CE|88304&IMP|1|M-00100^NML^SNM|...<cr>
OBX|5|CE|88304&ANT|2|T66000^APPENDIX^SNM|...<cr>
OBX|6|TX|88304&GDT|2|THIS IS A RED, INFLAMED, SWOLLEN, BOGGY APPENDIX|...<cr>
OBX|7|TX|88304&MDT|2|INFILTRATION WITH MANY PMN's - INDICATING INFLAMATORY
    CHANGE|...<cr>
OBX|8|CE|88304&IMP|2|M-40000^INFLAMMATION NOS^SNM|...<cr>
```

The example in Figure 7-2 has two segments for each component of the report, one for each of the two tissues. Thus, there are two 88304&ANT segments; there are two 88304&GDT segments, and there are two 88304&MDT segments. Segments that apply to the gallbladder all have the sub-identifier 1. Segments that apply to the appendix all have sub-identifier 2.

The observation sub ID has other grouping uses. It can be used to organize the reporting of some kinds of fluid intakes and outputs. For example, when intake occurs through multiple intravenous lines, a number of separate observations (OBX segments), the intake volume, the type of intake (Blood, D5W, Plasma, etc.), the site of the IV line, etc. may be needed for each intravenous line, each requiring a separate OBX segment. If more than one IV line is running, we can logically link all of the OBX segments that pertain to the first IV line by assigning them an observation sub ID of 1. We can do the same with the second IV line by assigning them a sub ID 2 and so on. The same would apply to the outputs of surgical drains when there are multiple such drains.

The use of the sub ID to distinguish repeating OBXs for the same observation ID is really a special case of using the sub ID to group, as can be seen if we picture the OBX segments in Figure 7-6 as part of a table where the rows correspond to a particular species of observation and the cells correspond to the sub ID numbers that would be associated with each corresponding OBX.

Distinct Observations	88304&ANT	88304&GDT	80304&MDT	80304&IMP
Sub ID 1st Group	1	1	1	1
Sub ID 2nd Group	2	2	2	2

The use of Sub IDs to group results is equivalent to defining a table, and the use of sub IDs to distinguish repeats is just a special case, represented by one column in this table.

However, this approach introduces ambiguities if we have a set of repeating observations within a group, e.g., if the appendix observations include two impressions as in the 8th and 9th OBXs shown in Figure 7-7. This really represents the existence of a row nested within a single cell of the table given above.

Figure 7-3. Example of sub-identifier usage

```
OBX|1|CE|880304&ANT|1|T57000^GALLBLADDER^SNM|...<cr>
OBX|2|TX|880304&GDT|1|THIS IS A NORMAL GALL BLADDER|...<cr>
OBX|3|TX|880304&MDT|1|MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION SHOWS HISTOLOGICALLY
    NORMAL GALLBLADDER TISSUE|...<cr>
OBX|4|CE|880304&IMP|1|M-00100^NML^SNM|...<cr>
OBX|5|CE|880304&ANT|2|T57000^APPENDIX^SNM|...<cr>
OBX|6|TX|880304&GDT|2|THIS IS A RED, INFLAMED APPENDIX|...<cr>
OBX|7|TX|880304&MDT|2|INFLAMMATION WITH MANY PUS CELLS-ACUTE INFLAMMATION|...<cr>
OBX|8|CE|880304&IMP|2|M-40000^INFLAMMATION NOS^SNM|...<cr>
OBX|9|CE|880304&IMP|2|M-30280^FECALITH^SNM|...<cr>
```

The text under *OBX-5-observation value* provides guidance about dealing with two OBXs with the same observation ID and observation sub IDs. They are sent and replaced as a unit. However, some systems will take this to mean that the set of OBXs is to be combined into one composite observation in the receiving system. We suggest the use of a dot and a string (similar to the Dewey Decimal system) when users wish to distinguish each of the repeats within one type, or results within a cell for editing and correction purposes. Using this system, Figure 7-3 would become 7-4. If there are cases where such nesting occurs at even deeper levels, this approach could be extended.

Figure 7-4. Example of sub-identifier usage

```
OBX|1|CE|880304&ANT|1|T57000^GALLBLADDER^SNM|...<cr>
OBX|2|TX|880304&GDT|1|THIS IS A NORMAL GALL BLADDER|...<cr>
OBX|3|TX|880304&MDT|1|MICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION SHOWS HISTOLOGICALLY
    NORMAL GALLBLADDER TISSUE|...<cr>
OBX|4|CE|880304&IMP|1|M-00100^NML^SNM|...<cr>
OBX|5|CE|880304&ANT|2|T57000^APPENDIX^SNM|...<cr>
OBX|6|TX|880304&GDT|2|THIS IS A RED, INFLAMED APPENDIX|...<cr>
OBX|7|TX|880304&MDT|2|INFLAMMATION WITH MANY PUS CELLS-ACUTE INFLAMMATION|...<cr>
OBX|8|CE|880304&IMP|2.1|M-40000^INFLAMMATION NOS^SNM|...<cr>
OBX|9|CE|880304&IMP|2.2|M-30280^FECALITH^SNM|...<cr>
```

Use a null or 1 when there is no need for multiples.

If the observation includes a number of OBXs with the same value for the observation ID OBX-3, then one must use different values for the sub-ID. This is in fact the case of the repeats depicted in Figure 7-8, but without any need to group sets of OBXs. Three such OBXs could be distinguished by using sub-IDs 1, 2 etc. alternatively, sub-IDs 1.1, 1.2, 1.3 could be used, as shown in Figure 7-8. Figure 7-9 shows and example of an electrocardiograph chest radiograph report with three diagnostic impressions, using 1,2,3 in the sub-ID field to distinguish the three separate results.

Figure 7-5. Example of Sub-ID used to distinguish three independent results with the same observation ID

```
OBX|1|CE|8601-7^EKG IMPRESSION ^LN|1|^atrial fibrillation|...<cr>
```

```
OBX|2|CE|8601-7^EKG IMPRESSION ^LN|2|^OLD SEPTAL MYOCARDIAL INFARCT|...<cr>
OBX|3|CE|8601-7^EKG IMPRESSION ^LN|3|^poor R wave progression|...<cr>
```

7.4.2.5 OBX-5 Observation value (*) 00573

Definition: This field contains the value observed by the observation producer. *OBX-2-value type* contains the data type for this field according to which observation value is formatted. It is not a required field because some systems will report only the normalcy/abnormalcy (*OBX-8*), especially in product experience reporting.

Representation

This field contains the value of *OBX-3-observation identifier* of the same segment. Depending upon the observation, the data type may be a number (e.g., a respiratory rate), a coded answer (e.g., a pathology impression recorded as SNOMED), or a date/time (the date/time that a unit of blood is sent to the ward). An observation value is always represented as the data type specified in *OBX-2-value type* of the same segment. Whether numeric or short text, the answer shall be recorded in ASCII text.

Reporting logically independent observations

The main sections of dictated reports, such as radiologic studies or history and physicals, are reported as separate OBX segments. In addition, each logically independent observation should be reported in a separate OBX segment, i.e. one OBX segment should not contain the **result** of more than one logically independent observation. This requirement is included to assure that the contents of *OBX-6-units*, *OBX-8-abnormal flags*, and *OBX-9-probability* can be interpreted unambiguously. The electrolytes and vital signs batteries, for example, would each be reported as four separate OBX segments. Two diagnostic impressions, e.g., congestive heart failure and pneumonia, would also be reported as two separate OBX segments whether reported as part of a discharge summary or chest X-ray report. Similarly, two bacterial organisms isolated in a single bacterial culture would be reported as two separate OBX segments.

Though two independent diagnostic **statements** cannot be reported in one OBX segment, multiple categorical responses are allowed (usually as CE data types separated by repeat delimiters), so long as they are fragments (modifiers) that together construct one diagnostic statement. Right upper lobe (recorded as one code) and pneumonia (recorded as another code), for example, could be both reported in one OBX segment. Such multiple “values” would be separated by repeat delimiters.

Multiple OBX segments with the same observation ID and Sub ID

In some systems, a single observation may include **fragments** of more than one data type. The most common example is a numeric result followed by coded comments (CE). In this case, the logical observation can be sent in more than one OBX segment. For example, one segment of numeric or string data type for the numeric result and another segment of CE data type for coded comments. If the producer was reporting multiple coded comments they would all be sent in one OBX segment separated by repeat delimiters because they all modified a single logical observation. Multiple OBX segments with the same observation ID and sub ID should always be sent in sequence with the most significant OBX segment (the one that has the normal flag/units and or reference range and status flag) first. The value of *OBX-6 through 12* should be null in any following OBX segments with the same *OBX-3-observation identifier* and *OBX-4-observation sub-ID*. For the purpose of replacement or deletion, multiple OBX segments with the same observation ID and sub ID are treated as a unit. If any are replaced or deleted, they all are replaced.

Coded values

When an OBX segment contains values of CE data types, the observations are stored as a combination of codes and/or text. In Section 7.5.3, "CSS - clinical study data schedule segment," examples of results that are represented as CE data types are shown in the first and second OBX segments of OBR 1 and the first and second OBX segments of OBR 2. The observation may be an observation battery ID (for recommended studies), a diagnostic code or finding (for a diagnostic impression), or an anatomic site for a pathology report, or any of the other kinds of coded results.

It is not necessary to always encode the information stored within a coded observation. For example, a chest X-ray impression could be transmitted as pure text even though it has a CE data type. In this case, the test must be recorded as the second component of the **result code,** e.g.,

```
OBX|1|CE|71020&IMP|1|^CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE.|...<cr>
```

However, separate impressions, recommendations, etc., even if recorded as pure text, should be recorded in separate result segments. That is, congestive heart failure and pneumonia should not be sent as:

```
OBX|1|CE|71020&IMP|1|^CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE AND PNEUMONIA|...<cr>
```

but as:

```
OBX|1|CE|71020&IMP|1|^CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE|...<cr>
OBX|2|CE|71020&IMP|2|^PNEUMONIA|....<cr>
```

Even better would be fully-coded results that include computer understandable codes (component 1) instead of, or in addition to, the text description (component 2). One may include multiple values in a CE value and these can be mixtures of code and text, but only when they are needed to construct one diagnosis, impression, or concept. When text follows codes as an independent value it would be taken as a modifier or addenda to the codes. E.g.,

```
OBX|1|CE|710120&IMP^CXR|1|428.0^CONGESTIVE HEART FAILURE^I9C~^MASSIVE HEART|...<cr>
```

The text in component 2 should be an accurate description of the code in component 1. Likewise, if used, the text in component 5 should be an accurate description of the code in component 4.

7.4.2.6 OBX-6 Units (CE) 00574

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Background: When an observation's value is measured on a continuous scale, one must report the measurement units within the units field of the OBX segment. Since HL7 Version 2.2 of the specification, all fields that contain units are of data type CE. The default coding system for the units codes consists of the ISO abbreviation for a single case unit (ISO 2955-83) plus extensions that do not collide with ISO abbreviations. We designate this coding system as ISO+ (see Figure 7-13). Both the ISO unit's abbreviations and the extensions are defined in Section 7.4.2.6.2, "ISO and ANSI customary units abbreviations." The ISO+ abbreviations *are* the codes for the default coding system. Consequently, when ISO+ units are being used, only ISO+ abbreviations need be sent, and the contents of the units field will be backward compatible to HL7 Version 2.1.

7.4.2.6.1 Identifying reporting units

We strongly encourage observation producers to use ISO+ abbreviated units exclusively, but permit the use of other code systems, including US customary units (ANSI X3.50) and locally defined codes where necessary. Local units are designated **L** or 99zzz where z is an alphanumeric character (see Figures 7-2

and 73). ANSI X3.50 - 1986 provides an excellent description of these standards, as well as a table of single case abbreviations for US customary units such as foot or gallon.

We had originally intended to include the ANSI X3.50 - 1986 US customary units in the default ISO+ coding system. However, there are overlaps between ISO's abbreviations and the abbreviations for US customary units. For example, **ft** is the abbreviation for foot in US customary units and for femtotesla in ISO; **pt** is the abbreviation for pint in US customary and for picotesla in ISO. (Be aware that the ANSI document also differs from the ISO document regarding the abbreviation of a few ISO units, as well.) In order to avoid potential ambiguity, we have defined another coding system, designated ANS+. It includes the US customary units (e.g., feet, pounds) and **ISO** abbreviations defined in ANSI X3.50 - 1986, as well as other non-metric units listed in Figure 7-13 and the ISO combinations of these units. Be aware that a few of the ANSI **ISO** unit abbreviations differ from their abbreviations in ISO (see note at bottom of Figure 7-13).

Because the ANS+ specification includes both **ISO** and US customary units, as well as miscellaneous non-metric units, some of the abbreviations are ambiguous. Although there should be little confusion, in the context of a particular observation, this ambiguity is a good reason for avoiding ANS+ unit codes when possible.

When ANS+ units codes (abbreviations) are being transmitted, **ANS**+ must be included in the third (sixth) component of the field. If the units of distance were transmitted as meters (ISO+) it would be transmitted as **m** because ISO+ is the default coding system for units. However, if transmitted in the US customary units of feet, the units would be transmitted as **ft^^ANS+.** When required, the full text of the units can be sent as the second component in keeping with the CE data type conventions.

Both ISO and ANSI also provide a set of mixed case abbreviations, but these abbreviations cannot be translated to single case without loss of meaning, and should not be used in this specification whose content is required to be case insensitive.

7.4.2.6.2 ISO and ANSI customary units abbreviations

ISO builds its units from seven base dimensions measured as meters, kilograms, seconds, amperes, kelvins, moles and candelas (see Figure 7-6). Other units can be derived from these by adding a prefix to change the scale and/or by creating an algebraic combination of two or more base or derived units. However, some derived units have acquired their own abbreviations (see Figure 7-6). Abbreviations for U.S. customary units are given in Figure 7-6.

The ISO rules, well explained in ANSI X3.50, provide a way to create units of different scales by adding **multiplier** prefixes. These prefixes can be expressed as **words** or abbreviations. In this Standard we are only concerned with the abbreviations.

Figure 7-6. ISO single case units abbreviations

Units	Abbreviation	Units	Abbreviation	Units	Abbreviation
Base units code/abbreviations					
ampere	a	kelvin	k	meter	m
candela	cd	Kilogram	kg	mole	mol
				second	s

Derived units with specified name and abbreviation					
coulomb	c	hour	Hr	pascal	pal
day	d	joule	J	volt	v
degree Celsius	cel	minute (ti)	Min	watt	w
farad	f	newton	N	weber	wb
hertz	hz	ohm	Ohm	year	ann
Other units					
atomic mass unit	u	grey	gy	minute of arc	mnt
Bel	b	henry	h	radian	rad
Decibel	db	liter	l	siemens	sie
Degree	deg	lumen	Lm	steradian	sr
Gram	g	lux	Lx	tesla	t
See ISO 2955-1983 for full set					

The ISO abbreviations for multiplier prefixes are given in Figure 7-12. Prefixes ranging from 10^{-24} (1/billion billionth) to 10^{24} (a billion billion) are available. The single case abbreviation for kilo (x1000) is **k**. A unit consisting of 1000 seconds would be abbreviated as **ks**, 1000 grams as **kg**, 1000 meters as **km**, and so on. Some prefixes share the abbreviation of a base unit. Farad and femto, for example, (10^{-18}) both have the abbreviation of **f**. To avoid confusion, ISO forbids the use of solitary prefixes. It also deprecates the use of two prefixes in one complex unit. Thus, **f** always means farad, **ff** would mean 1 million billionth of a farad. Compound prefixes are not allowed.

A unit can be raised to an exponential power. Positive exponents are represented by a number immediately following a unit's abbreviation, i.e., a square meter would be denoted by m2. Negative exponents are signified by a negative number following the base unit, e.g., **$1/m^2$** would be represented **as m-2.** Fractional exponents are expressed by a numeric fraction in parentheses: the square root of a meter would be expressed as m(1/2). The multiplication of units is signified by a period (.) between the units, e.g., meters X seconds would be denoted **m.s**. Notice that spaces are not permitted. Division is signified by a slash (/) between two units, e.g. meters per second would be denoted as **m/s**. Algebraic combinations of ISO unit abbreviations constructed by dividing, multiplying, or exponentiating base ISO units, are also valid ISO abbreviations units. Exponentiation has precedence over multiplication or division. For example, microvolts squared per hertz (a unit of spectral power) would be denoted **uv2/hz** and evaluated as uv ^{2}/hz while microvolts per square root of hertz (a unit of spectral amplitude) would be denoted uv/hz(1/2) and evaluated as uv/hz^{½}. If more than one division operator is included in the expression the associations should be parenthesized to avoid any ambiguity, but the best approach is to convert a/(b/c) to a.c/b or a.c.b-1 to simplify the expression.

The ISO code is a grammar for building units. The rules for building these units are found in Figures 7-6 and 7-8. Figure 7-7 should be used only with English units and should not be used in conjunction with Figure 7-8. The ISO+ table (Figure 7-13) includes the most common such units constructed from this grammar (as well as important non-ISO units). Other ISO units derived from the grammar are valid as well.

Figure 7-7. ANSI+ unit codes for some U.S. customary units

Units	Abbreviation	Units	Abbreviation	Units	Abbreviation

LENGTH		VOLUME		TIME	
inch	in	cubic foot	cft	year	yr
foot	ft	cubic inch	cin	month	mo
mile (statute)	mi	cubic yard	cyd	week	wk
nautical mile	nmi	tablespoon	tbs	day	d
rod	rod	teaspoon	tsp	hour	hr
yard	yd	pint	pt	minute	min
		quart	qt	second	sec
		gallon	gal		
		ounce (fluid)	foz		
AREA		MASS			
square foot	sqf	dram	dr		
square inch	sin	grain	gr (avoir)		
square yard	syd	ounce (weight)	oz		
		pound	lb		
Other ANSI units, derived units, and miscellaneous					
**British thermal unit	btu	**degrees Fahrenheit	degf	**millirad	mrad
cubic feet/minute	cft/min	**feet/minute	ft/min	**RAD	rad

Note: The abbreviations for conventional U.S. units of time are the same as ISO, except for year. ISO = ANN, AMSI = yr. The metric units in X3.50 are the same as ISO, except for: pascal ("pa" in ANSI, "pal" in ISO); ANSI uses "min" for both time and arc while ISO uses "mnt" for minutes of arc; and in ISA seconds are abbreviated "s", in ANSI, "sec".

This list is not exhaustive. Refer to ANSI X3.50-1986, Table 1, for other metric and standard U.S. units.

**Non-metric units not explicitly listed in ANSI

Figure 7-8. Single case ISO abbreviations for multiplier prefixes

Prefix		Code	Prefix		Code
yotta*	10^{24}	ya	yocto	10^{-24}	y
zetta*	10^{21}	za	zepto	10^{-21}	z
exa	10^{18}	ex	atto	10^{-18}	a
peta	10^{15}	pe	femto	10^{-15}	f
tera	10^{12}	t	pico	10^{-12}	p
giga	10^{9}	g	nano	10^{-9}	n
mega	10^{6}	ma	micro	10^{-6}	u
kilo	10^{3}	k	milli	10^{-3}	m
hecto	10^{2}	h	centi	10^{-2}	c
deca	10^{1}	da	deci	10^{-1}	d

*These abbreviations are not defined in the ISO specification for

Prefix		Code	Prefix		Code
single case abbreviations.					

Figure 7-9 lists the abbreviations for common ISO derived units. It also includes standard unit abbreviations for common units, e.g., Milliequivalents, and international units, mm(Hg), and for counting per which we denote by a division sign, a denominator, but no numerator, e.g., /c, that are not part of the above referenced ISO standards. We have extended the units table to better accommodate drug routes and physiologic measures, and otherwise fill in gaps in Version 2.2.

We have generally followed the IUPAC 1995 Silver Book[2] in the definitions of units. However, IUPAC specifies standards for reporting or displaying units and employs 8-bit data sets to distinguish them. This Standard is concerned with the *transmission* of patient information. Therefore, we have restricted ourselves to case insensitive alphabetic characters and a few special characters (e.g., ".", "/", "(", ")", "*", and "_") to avoid any possible confusion in the transmission. Therefore, we use ISO 2955-1983 (Information processing -- representation of SI and other units in systems with limited character sets) and ANSI X3.50-1986 (Representations for U.S. customary, SI, and other units to be used in systems with limited character sets) case insensitive units abbreviations where they are defined. This means that in some cases, IUPAC abbreviations have different abbreviations in ISO+ even when the IUPAC abbreviations use only standard alphabetic characters. For example, **Pascal** is abbreviated **Pa** in IUPAC but **PAL** in ISO+ (following ISO 2955) because **Pa** in a case insensitive context also means **Picoampere**. However, the requirements for transmission do not preclude usage of IUPAC standards for presentation on paper or video display reports to end-users.

All unit abbreviations are case insensitive. One could write milliliters as ML, ml, or mL. In this table we have used lower case for all of the abbreviations except for the letter **L** which we represent in upper case so that readers will not confuse it with the numeral one (1). This is just a change in presentation, not a change in the Standard. Systems should continue to send the codes as upper or lower case as they always have.

Refer to section 7.18.4 for the contents of figure 7-9 - Common ISO derived units & ISO+ extensions.

7.4.2.6.3 Local unit codes

Local codes can be used for the units by indicating the code source of **99zzz** in the third component (where 99zzz is an alpha-numeric string). In the case of local codes, the text name of the codes or the description of the units should also be transmitted (in the second component), so that the receiving system can compare the results with results for the same measurement sent by another service (refer to Chapter 2, Section 2.9, “Data Types”). An "L" should be stored in the third component to indicate that the code is locally defined. More specialized local code designations, as specified in the CE data type definition, can also be employed.

7.4.2.7 OBX-7 References range (ST) 00575

Components: for numeric values in the format:

d) lower limit-upper limit (when both lower and upper limits are defined, e.g., for potassium 3.5 - 4.5)

e) > lower limit (if no upper limit, e.g., >10)

f) < upper limit (if no lower limit, e.g., <15)

alphabetical values: the normal value may be reported in this location

Definition: When the observation quantifies the amount of a toxic substance, then the upper limit of the range identifies the toxic limit. If the observation quantifies a drug, the lower limits identify the lower therapeutic bounds and the upper limits represent the upper therapeutic bounds above which toxic side effects are common.

7.4.2.8 OBX-8 Abnormal flags (IS) 00576

Definition: This field contains a table lookup indicating the normalcy status of the result. We strongly recommend sending this value when applicable. (See ASTM 1238 - review for more details). Refer to *User-defined Table 0078 - Abnormal flags* for valid entries.

When the laboratory can discern the normal status of a textual report, such as chest X-ray reports or microbiologic culture, these should be reported as N when normal and A when abnormal. Multiple codes, e.g., abnormal and worse, would be separated by a repeat delimiter, e.g., A~W.

User-defined Table 0078 - Abnormal flags

Value	Description
L	Below low normal
H	Above high normal
LL	Below lower panic limits
HH	Above upper panic limits
<	Below absolute low-off instrument scale
>	Above absolute high-off instrument scale
N	Normal (applies to non-numeric results)
A	Abnormal (applies to non-numeric results)
AA	Very abnormal (applies to non-numeric units, analogous to panic limits for numeric units)
null	No range defined, or normal ranges don't apply
U	Significant change up
D	Significant change down
B	Better--use when direction not relevant
W	Worse--use when direction not relevant
S	Susceptible. Indicates for microbiology susceptibilities only.
R	Resistant. Indicates for microbiology susceptibilities only.
I	Intermediate. Indicates for microbiology susceptibilities only.
MS	Moderately susceptible. Indicates for microbiology susceptibilities only.
VS	Very susceptible. Indicates for microbiology susceptibilities only.

Results may also be reported in **shorthand** by reporting the normalcy status without specifying the exact numeric value of the result. Such shorthand is quite common in clinical notes, where physicians will simply say that **the glucose result was normal.** Such shorthand reporting is also seen in drug experience reporting. In such cases, the result can be reported in the OBX by reporting the normalcy code in *OBX-8-abnormal flags* without specifying any value in *OBX-5-observation value.*

7.4.2.9 OBX-9 Probability (NM) 00577

Definition: This field contains the probability of a result being true for results with categorical values. It mainly applies to discrete coded results. It is a decimal number represented as an ASCII string that must be between 0 and 1, inclusive.

7.4.2.10 OBX-10 Nature of abnormal test (ID) 00578

Definition: This field contains the nature of the abnormal test. Refer to *HL7 Table 0080 - Nature of abnormal testing* for valid values. As many of the codes as apply may be included, separated by repeat delimiters. For example, normal values based on age, sex, and race would be codes as A~S~R.

HL7 Table 0080 - Nature of abnormal testing

Value	Description
A	An age-based population
N	None - generic normal range
R	A race-based population
S	A sex-based population

7.4.2.11 OBX-11 Observation result status (ID) 00579

Definition: This field contains the observation result status. Refer to *HL7 table 0085 - Observation result status codes interpretation* for valid values. This field reflects the current completion status of the results for one Observation Identifier.

It is a required field. Previous versions of HL7 stated this implicitly by defining a default value of "F." Code **F** indicates that the result has been verified to be correct and final. Code **W** indicates that the result has been verified to be wrong (incorrect); a replacement (corrected) result may be transmitted later. Code **C** indicates that data contained in the *OBX-5-observation value* field are to replace previously transmitted (verified and) final result data with the same observation ID (including suffix, if applicable) and observation sub-ID usually because the previous results were wrong. Code **D** indicates that data previously transmitted in a result segment with the same observation ID (including suffix) and observation sub-ID should be deleted. When changing or deleting a result, multiple OBX segments with the same observation ID and observation sub-ID are replaced or deleted as a unit. Normal progression of results through intermediate (e.g., 'gram positive cocci') to final (e.g., 'staphylococcus aureus') should not be transmitted as **C** (correction); they should be transmitted as **P** or **S** (depending upon the specific case) until they are final.

There are situations where the observation battery required for the order needs to be dynamically specified at the time of ordering. That is, this battery is then defined by the set of OBX segments transmitted along with the order and generated by the placing system. For example, timed measurements of serum glucose challenge tests may vary among laboratories. One institution may report them at –30, -15, 0, 30, 60, and 120 minutes, while another may report them at –30, 0, 30, 60, 90, and 120 minutes. Master file entries may exist for each individual element of the battery but not for the battery itself. Another example may be Renin Studies where the specification may be done upon ordering without having a master file definition for each permutation of the possible element. The OBX segments in the ORM message can be used to create dynamic specifications to accommodate these permutations without defining pre-existing master file definitions for the battery itself. The result status field in the OBX can be used to indicate whether the OBX in the ORM message is used to provide a dynamic specification or is used to communicate a result

as context to the order. The status of O shall be used to indicate that the OBX segment is used for a dynamic specification of the required result. An OBX used for a dynamic specification must contain the detailed examination code, units, etc., with *OBX-11* valued with O, and *OBX-2* and *OBX-5* valued with null.

HL7 Table 0085 - Observation result status codes interpretation

Value	Description
C	Record coming over is a correction and thus replaces a final result
D	Deletes the OBX record
F	Final results; Can only be changed with a corrected result.
I	Specimen in lab; results pending
N	Not asked; used to affirmatively document that the observation identified in the OBX was not sought when the universal service ID in OBR-4 implies that it would be sought.
O	Order detail description only (no result)
P	Preliminary results
R	Results entered -- not verified
S	Partial results
X	Results cannot be obtained for this observation
U	Results status change to final without retransmitting results already sent as 'preliminary.' E.g., radiology changes status from preliminary to final
W	Post original as wrong, e.g., transmitted for wrong patient

7.4.2.12 OBX-12 Date last observation normal value (TS) 00580

Definition: This field contains the changes in the observation methods that would make values obtained from the old method not comparable with those obtained from the new method.

Null if there are no normals or units. If present, a change in this date compared to date-time recorded, the receiving system's test dictionary should trigger a manual review of the results to determine whether the new observation ID should be assigned a new ID in the local system to distinguish the new results from the old.

7.4.2.13 OBX-13 User defined access checks (ST) 00581

Definition: This field permits the producer to record results-dependent codes for classifying the observation at the receiving system. This field should be needed only rarely, because most classifications are fixed attributes of the observation ID and can be defined in the associated observation master file (see description in Chapter 8).

However, there are a few cases when such controls vary with the value of the observation in a complex way that the receiving system would not want to re-calculate. An example is an antimicrobial susceptibility result. Some systems prefer to display only the susceptibility results of inexpensive antimicrobials depending upon the organism, the source of the specimen and the patient's allergy status. The sending service wants to send all of the susceptibilities so that certain privileged users (e.g., Infectious Disease specialists) can review all of the results but nonprivileged users would see only the "preferred" antimicrobials to which the organism was susceptible. We expect that other cases also occur.

7.4.2.14 OBX-14 Date/time of the observation (TS) 00582

Definition: This field is required in two circumstances. The first is when the observations reported beneath one report header (OBR) have different dates/times. This could occur in the case of queries, timed test sequences, or clearance studies where one measurement within a battery may have a different time than another measurement.

It is also needed in the case of OBX segments that are being sent by the placer to the filler, in which case the date of the observation being transmitted is likely to have no relation to the date of the requested observation. In France, requesting services routinely send a set of the last observations along with the request for a new set of observations. The date of these observations is important to the filler laboratories.

In all cases, the observation date-time is the physiologically relevant date-time or the closest approximation to that date-time. In the case of tests performed on specimens, the relevant date-time is the specimen's collection date-time. In the case of observations taken directly on the patient (e.g., X-ray images, history and physical), the observation date-time is the date-time that the observation was performed.

7.4.2.15 OBX-15 Producer's ID (CE) 00583

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains a unique identifier of the responsible producing service. It should be reported explicitly when the test results are produced at outside laboratories, for example. When this field is null, the receiving system assumes that the observations were produced by the sending organization. This information supports CLIA regulations in the US. The code for producer ID is recorded as a CE data type. In the US, the Medicare number of the producing service is suggested as the identifier.

7.4.2.16 OBX-16 Responsible observer (XCN) 00584

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, use instead of the CN data type.  <ID number (ST)> ^ <family
            name (FN)> ^ <given name (ST)> ^ <second or further given names or initials thereof
            (ST)> ^ <suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <degree (e.g., MD)
            (IS)> ^ <source table (IS)> ^ <assigning authority (HD)> ^ <name type code (ID)>  ^
            <identifier check digit (ST)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)>
            ^ <identifier type code (IS)> ^ <assigning facility (HD)> ^ <name representation code
            (ID)> ^ <name context (CE)> ^ <name validity range (DR)> ^ < name assembly order (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type
            (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning facility ID:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID
            type (ID)>
```

Definition: When required, this field contains the identifier of the individual directly responsible for the observation (i.e., the person who either performed or verified it). In a nursing service, the observer is usually the professional who performed the observation (e.g., took the blood pressure). In a laboratory, the observer is the technician who performed or verified the analysis. The code for the observer is recorded as a CE data type. If the code is sent as a local code, it should be unique and unambiguous when combined with *OBX-15-producer ID*.

7.4.2.17 OBX-17 Observation method (CE) 00936

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

This optional field can be used to transmit the method or procedure by which an observation was obtained when the sending system wishes to distinguish among one measurement obtained by different methods and the distinction is not implicit in the test ID. Chemistry laboratories do not usually distinguish between two different methods used to measure a given serum constituent (e.g., serum potassium) as part of the test name. See the LOINC® Users Manual[3] for a more complete discussion of these distinctions. If an observation producing service wanted to report the method used to obtain a particular observation, and the method was NOT embedded in the test name, they can use this field.

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) Method Code (CDCM) (see Figure 7-3) is one candidate code system for reporting methods/instruments. EUCLIDES method codes are another. User-defined tables are an alternative.

7.4.2.18 OBX-18 Equipment instance identifier (EI) 01479

```
Components: <entity identifier (ST)> ^ <namespace ID (IS)> ^ <universal ID (ST)> ^ <universal ID type
            (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the Equipment Instance (e.g., Analyzer, Analyzer module, group of Analyzers,...) responsible for the production of the observation. This is the identifier from an institution's master list of equipment, where the institution is specified by the *namespace ID* or if it is blank, then by the "Producer's ID" (OBX-15). It should be possible to retrieve from this master list the equipment type, serial number, etc., however it is not planned to transfer this information with every OBX. The repeating of this field allows for the hierarchical representation of the equipment (lowest level first), e.g., module of an instrument, instrument consisting of modules, cluster of multiple instruments, etc.

7.4.2.19 OBX-19 Date/time of the analysis (TS) 01480

Definition: This field is used to transfer the time stamp associated with generation of the analytical result by the instrument specified in Equipment Instance Identifier (see above).

7.5 EXAMPLES OF USE

7.5.1 Query/response

The following is a query of the EKG system for the data for a particular patient number 0123456-1 for reports that have been modified or created since 1/1/88. These examples use LOINC® clinical codes. The response ends with a continuation pointer. A continuation query follows, in reply to which a continuation response is sent.

[3] LOINC® Committee. Logical Observation Identifier Names and Codes. Indianapolis: Regenstrief Institute and LOINC® Committee, 1995. Regenstrief Institute c/o LOINC, 1050 Wishard Blvd., RG-5, Indianapolis, IN 46202. 317/630-7433. Available at http://www:regenstrief.org/loinc/loinc.html. The LOINC® Code System is described in Forrey AW, McDonald CJ, DeMoor G, Huff SM, Leavelle D, Leland D, et.al. Logical Observation Identifier Names and Codes (LOINC®) database: a public use set of codes and names for electronic reporting of clinical laboratory test results. Clinical Chemistry 1996;42:81-90

Query (QRY)

```
MSH|^~\&|CBD||EKG||198905201200||QRY^R02|CDB22222|P|...<cr>
QRD|198904180943|R|I|Q4412|||10|RD|0123456-1|RES|...<cr>
QRF|EKG||198801010000|...<cr>
```

Response

```
MSH|^~\&|EKG||CDB||198905201201||ORF^R04|X981672|P|...<cr>
MSA|AA|CDB22222|P|...<cr>
QRD|198904180943|R|I|Q4412|||10|RD|0123456-1|RES|...<cr>
QRF|EKG||198804010000|...<cr>
PID|1||0123456-1||ROBERTSON^JOHN^H|||||||982-1111|...<cr>
OBR|1|43215^OE|98765^EKG|93000^EKG REPORT| ||198801111330|||1235^TAYLOR^ROBERT^M||||
 198801111330||P030||||||198801120930||||||P011^PRESLEY^ELVIS^AARON^^^MD|43214^OE|...<c
    r>


OBX|1|ST|8897-1^QRS COMPLEX^LN||91|/MIN|60-100||||F|...<cr>
OBX|2|ST|8894-8^P WAVE^LN||92|/MIN|60-100||||F|...<cr>
OBX|3|ST|8625-6^P-R INTERVAL^LN||0|/MSEC|1.06-.10||||F|...<cr>
OBX|4|ST|8633-0^QRS DURATION^LN||.368|/MSEC|.18-.22||||F|...<cr>
...
...
...
OBX|8|CE|8601-7^EKG IMPRESSION^LN|1|^ATRIAL FIBRILATION|||||F|...<cr>
OBX|9|CE|8601-7^EKG IMPRESSION^LN|2|^ST DEPRESSION||||||F|...<cr>
OBX|10|FT|93000&ADT^EKG COMMENT||\.in+4\\.ti-4\ 1. When compared with EKG of
 31-oct-88 ventricular rate has increased by 30 bpm.\.sp\\.ti-4\
 2. Criteria for Lateral infarct are no longer present.|||||F|...<cr>
OBR|2|43217^OE|98767^EKG|93000^EKG
    REPORT|||198810311004|||||||198810311004||P030||||||198810311744||||||
 P011^PRESLEY^ELVIS^AARON^^^MD |43213^OE |...<cr>
                    ...
                    ...
                    ...
DSC|1896X22;0123456-1|...<cr>
```

Continuation query

```
MSH|^~\&|CDB||EKG||198905201204||QRY^R02|CDB22289|P|...<cr>
QRD|198904180943|R|I|Q4412|||10|RD|0123456-1|RES|...<cr>
QRF|EKG||1988040100000|...<cr>
DSC|1896X22;0123456-1|...<cr>
```

Continuation response

```
MSH|^~\&|EKG||CDB||198905201205||ORF^R04|X981672|P|...<cr>
MSA|AA|CDB22289|P|...<cr>
QRD|198904180943|R|I|Q4412|||10|RD|0123456-1|RES|...<cr>
QRF|EKG||198804010000|...<cr>
PID|1||0123456-1||ROBERTSON^JOHN^H|||||||982-1111|...<cr>
```

```
OBR| ...<cr>
```

7.5.2 Unsolicited

The following is an unsolicited transmission of radiology data.

```
MSH|^~\&|XRAY||CDB||200006021411||ORU^R01|K172|P|...<cr>
PID|...<cr>
OBR|1|X89-1501^OE|78912^RD|71020^CHEST XRAY AP \T\
    LATERAL|||19873290800|||9218^MASTERS^JOHN^B|...<cr>
OBX|1|CE|71020&IMP^RADIOLOGIST'S IMPRESSION|4|^MASS LEFT LOWER LOBE|||A|||F|...<cr>
OBX|2|CE|71020&IMP|2|^INFILTRATE RIGHT LOWER LOBE|||A|||F|...<cr>
OBX|3|CE|71020&IMP|3|^HEART SIZE NORMAL|||N|||F|...<cr>
OBX|4|FT|71020&GDT|1|circular density (2 x 2 cm) is seen in the posterior segment of
 the LLL.  A second, less well-defined infiltrated circulation density is
 seen in the R mid lung field and appears to cross the minor fissure#||||||F|...<cr>
OBX|5|CE|71020&REC|5|71020^Follow up CXR 1 month||30-45||||F|...<cr>
```

7.5.3 Laboratory

Laboratory message: electrolytes, CBC, sed rate, blood cultures and susceptibilities

```
MSH|...<cr>
PID|...<cr>
```

Electrolytes:

```
OBR|1|870930010^OE|CM3562^LAB|2432-6^ELECTROLYTES HCFA 98 PANEL^LN| ||198703290800|||
 401-0^INTERN^JOE^^^^MD^L| ||||SER|^SMITH^RICHARD^W.^^^DR.|(319)377-4400|
 This is requestor field #1.|Requestor field #2|Diag.serv.field #1.|
 Diag.serv.field #2.|198703311400|||F|...<cr>
OBX|1|NM|2951-2^SODIUM^LN||150|mmol/L|136-148|H||A|F|19850301|...<cr>
OBX|2|NM|2823-3^POTASSIUM^LN||4.5|mmol/L|3.5-5|N||N|F|19850301|...<cr>
OBX|3|NM|2075-0^CHLORIDE^LN||102|mmol/L|94-105|N||N|F|19850301|...<cr>
OBX|4|NM|2028-9^CARBON DIOXIDE^LN||27|mmol/L|24-31|N||N|F|19850301|...<cr>
```

CBC:

```
OBR|2|870930011^OE|HEM3268^LAB|24359-2HEMOGRAM+DIFFERENTIAL PANEL^LN|
    ||198703290800|||401-0 ^
 INTERN^JOE^^^^MD^L|||||BLDV|^SMITH^RICHARD^W.^^^DR.|(319)377-4400|This is
        requestor field #1.|This is Requestor field #2.|This is lab field #1.|Lab
        field #2.|198703311400|||F|...<cr>


OBX|1|NM|718-7^HEMOGLOBIN^LN||13.4|GM/DL|14-18|N||S|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|2|NM|4544-3^HEMATOCRIT^LN||40.3|%|42-52|L||S|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|3|NM|789-8^ERYTHROCYTES^LN||4.56|10*6/ml|4.7-6.1|L||S|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|4|NM|787-2^ERYTHROCYTE MEAN CORPUSCULAR VOLUME:^LN
   ||88|fl|80-94|N||S|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|5|NM|785-6^ERYTHROCYTE MEAN CORPUSCULAR HEMOGLOBIN:^LN
   ||29.5|pg|27-31|N||N|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|6|NM|786-4^ERYTHROCYTE MEAN CORPUSCULAR HEMOGLOBIN CONCENTRATION:^LN
```

```
   ||33|%|33-37|N||N|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|7|NM|6690-2^LEUKOCYTES^LN||10.7|10*3/ml|4.8-10.8|N||N|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|8|NM|770-8^NEUTROPHILS/100 LEUKOCYTES^LN/100 LEUKOCYTES:^LN||68|%|||||F|...<cr>
OBX|9|NM|736-9^LYMPHOCYTES/100 LEUKOCYTES:^LN||29|%|||||F|...<cr>
OBX|10|NM|5905-5^MONOCYTES/100 LEUKOCYTES:^LN||1|%|||||F|...<cr>
OBX|11|NM|713-8^EOSINOPHILS/100 LEUKOCYTES:^LN||2|%|||||F|...<cr>
```

Sed rate:

```
OBR|3|870930011^OE|HEM3269^LAB|4537-7^ERYTHROCYTE SEDIMENTATION RATE^LN
   |||198703290800|||
 401-0^INTERN^JOE^^^^MD^L|||||BLDV|^SMITH^RICHARD^W.^^^DR.|(319)377-4400|
 This is requestor field #1.|This is Requestor field #2.|This is lab field
 #1.|Lab field #2.|198703311400|||F|...<cr>
OBX|1|NM|4537-7^ERYTHROCYTE SEDIMENTATION RATE:^LN|
   |7|MM/HR|0-10|N||S|F|19860522|...<cr>
```

Parent micro result, identifies organism

```
OBR|4|2740X^OE|BC376^MIC|87040^Blood culture| ||198703290800|||
 99-2^JONES^COLLECTOR||^Hepatitis risk||198703290830|BLDV|
 4010^INTERN^JOE^^^^MD^L|321-4321 X3472^^^^^^^3472|Requestor field 1|Requestor field 2|
 Producer's field 1|Producer's field 2|198703301000|35.00|MB|F|...<cr>
OBX|1|CE|600-7^MICROORGANISM IDENTIFIED^LN|1|^E Coli|||A|||F|...<cr>
OBX|2|CE|600-7^MICROORGANISM IDENTIFIED^LN|2|^S Aureus|||A|||F|...<cr>
```

Child micro result, gives antimicrobials susceptibilities for organism identified in first OBX of parent

```
OBR|5|2740X^OE|BC402^MIC|87186^Antibiotic MIC||
   |198703290800||||G|^Hepatitis Risk||198703290830|BLDB
   |401.0^INTERN^JOE^^^^MD^L|321-4321 X3472^^^^^^^3472|||||198703310900|40.00
   |MB|F|600-7&MICROORGANISM IDENTIFIED&LN^1|||2740X&OE^BC376&MIC|...<cr>
OBX|1|ST|28-1^AMIPICILLIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<2|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|2|ST|60-4^CARBENICILLIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<16|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|3|ST|267-5^GENTAMICIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<2|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|4|ST|496-0^TETRACYCLINE:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<1|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|5|ST|408-5^PIPERACILLIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<8|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|6|ST|145-3^CEFUROXIME:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<2|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|7|ST|161-0^CEPHALOTHIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<8|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|8|ST|20-8^AMOXICILLIN+CLAVULANATE:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN
   ||<4|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|9|ST|173-5^CHLORAMPHENICOL:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<4|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|10|ST|508-2^TOBRAMYCIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<2|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|11|ST|12-5^AMIKACIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<4|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|12|ST|516-5^TRIMETHOPRIM+SULFMOETHOXAZOLE:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN|
   |<2/38|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|13|ST|76-0^CEFAZOLIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<2|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|14|ST|116-4^CEFOXITIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<2|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|15|ST|141-2^CEFTRIAXONE:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<4|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|16|ST|133-9^CEFTAZIDIME:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<2|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
```

```
OBX|17|ST|185-9^CIPROFLOXACIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<1|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
```

Second micro child result, gives susceptibilities or organism identified by Second OBX of parent

```
OBR|6|2740X^OE|BC403^MIC|87186^Antibiotic MIC| ||198703290800||||G|
 ^Hepatitis risk||198703290830|BLDV|401.0^INTERN^JOE^^^^MD^L|321-4321
    X3472^^^^^^^3472|||||
 198703310900|40.00|MB|F|600-7&MICROORGANISM IDENTIFIED &LN^2|
    ||2740X&OE^BC376&MIC|...<cr>
OBX|1|ST|28-1^AMPICILLIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<8|ug/ml||R|||F|...<cr>
OBX|2|ST|193-3^CLINDAMYCIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<.25|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|3|ST|267-5^GENTAMICIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<1|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|4|ST|233-7^ERYTHROMYCIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<.5|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|5|ST|383-0^OXACILLIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<.5|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|6|ST|524-9^VANCOMYCIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<2|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|7|ST|6932-8^PENICILLIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<8|ug/ml||R|||F|...<cr>
OBX|8|ST|161-0^CEPHALOTHIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<2|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|9|ST|173-5^CHLORAMPHENICOL:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<4|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|10|ST|12-5^AMIKACIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<16|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|11|ST|185-9^CIPROFLOXACIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<1|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
OBX|12|ST|428-3^RIFAMPIN:SUSC:PT:ISLT:QN:MIC^LN||<1|ug/ml||S|||F|...<cr>
```

7.5.4 Narrative report messages

This example of the body of reports shows the following observation from what are usually free text reports. The text within these examples that begins with **-- and ends with --** are explanatory comments, not a formal part of the message. The following outline shows the segments that are included in this example message.

a) patient identifying record (PID)

b) EKG order record (OBR)

c) EKG coded result record (OBX)

d) EKG result records (OBX):

   1) ventricular rate

   2) atrial rate

   3) QRS width

   4) PR interval

e) order record for chest x-ray (OBR)

f) two diagnostic impressions for CXR (OBX)

g) description record for CXR (OBX)

h) a recommendation record for CXR (OBX)

i) an order record for surgical pathology (OBR)

j) a gross description record for pathology showing use of anatomy fields (OBX)

k) a microscopic description record for pathology (OBX)

l) vital signs request (OBR)

m) six vital signs (OBX)

n) part of the physical history (OBR & OBX)

o) end record

```
MSH|...<cr>
PID|...<cr>
```

Order record for EKG

```
OBR|1|P8753^OE|EK5230^EKG|93000^EKG|||198703290800|||401
0^INTERN^JOE^^^^MD^L|...<cr>
```

Two interpretation records for EKG

```
OBX|1|CE|93000&IMP^EKG|1|^Sinus bradycardia|||A|||F|...<cr>
OBX|2|CE|93000&IMP^EKG|2|^Occasional PVCs|||A|||F|...<cr>
```

Four numeric results for EKG

```
OBX|3|NM|8897-1^QRS COMPLEX RATE ^LN|
   |80|/min|60-100|||||F|...<cr>
OBX|4|NM|8894-8^PULSE RATE^LN||80|/min
   |60-100||||F|...<cr>
OBX|5|NM|8633-0^QRS DURATION ^LN||.08|msec
   |.06-.10||||F|...<cr>
OBX|6|NM|8625-6^P-R INTERVAL ^LN||.22|msec
   |.18-.22||||F|...<cr>
```

Order record for CXR

```
OBR|2|P8754^OE|XR1501^XR|71020^Chest X-ray AP \T\ Lateral|||198703290800|||
   401-0^INTERN^JOE^^^^MD^L|...<cr>
```

Two CXR diagnostic impressions

```
OBX|1|CE|71020&IMP^Radiologist's
Impression|1|.61^RUL^ACR~.212^Bronchopneumonia^ACR|||A|||F|...<cr>
OBX|2|CE|71020&IMP|2|51.71^Congestive heart failure^ACR|||A|||F|...<cr>
```

CXR Description with continuation records

```
OBX|3|TX|71020&GDT||Infiltrate probably representing bronchopneumonia in the right
lower lobe.  Also pulmonary venous congestion cardiomegaly and cephalization,
    indicating early congestive heart failure.|...<cr>
```

Recommendations about CXR report to follow up one month with a repeat CXR

```
OBX|4|CE|71020&REC||71020^Followup CXR 1 month^AS4||||||F|...<cr>
```

Order record for pathology report

```
OBR|3|P8755^OE|SP89-739^SP|88304^Surgical Path
Report|||198703290800|||401-0^INTERN^JOE^^^^MD^L|...<cr>
OBX|1|CE|88304&ANT^Surgical Path Report|1|Y0480-912001^orbital
    region^SNM|||||F|...<cr>
```

Gross description record (with overflow) for pathology

```
OBX|2|TX|88304&GDT^GrossSpecimenDescription|1|The specimen is received in four
    containers.  The first is labeled with the patient's name and consists of three
    fragments of reddish-brown tissue each of which measures 2 mm in greatest
    dimension.  They are wrapped in tissue paper and submitted in toto in a single
    cassette|...<cr>
```

Microscopic description record for pathology

```
OBX|3|TX|88304&MDT^MicroscopicDescription|1|Sections of the first specimen received for
    frozen section diagnosis reveal thick walled, ramifying vessels lined by a single
    layer of flattened endothelial cells.  The thick smooth muscle walls exhibit no
    malignant cytologic features nor do the endothelial lining cells.  Within the same
    specimen are also found fragments of fibrous connective tissue, bone, and nerve
    which are histologically unremarkable||||||F|...<cr>
```

Vital signs using LOINC® codes as observation identifiers

```
OBR|4|P8756^OE|N2345^NR|3000.02^VITAL SIGNS| ||198703290800|||401-
    0^INTERN^JOE^^^^MD^L|...<cr>

OBX|1|NM|8462-4^INTRAVASCULAR DIASTOLIC:PRES:^LN||90|mm(hg)|60-90||||F|...<cr>

OBX|2|NM|8479-8^INTRAVASCULAR SYSTOLIC:PRES:^LN||120|mm(hg)

   |100-160||||F|...<cr>

OBX|3|NM|8478-0^INTRAVASCULAR MEAN:PRES:^LN||100|mm(hg)|80-120|N|||F|...<cr>

OBX|4|NM|8867-4^HEART BEAT RATE^LN||74|/min|60-100|N|||F|...<cr>

OBX|5|ST|8357-6^BLOOD PRESSURE METHOD^LN||MANUAL BY CUFF||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|6|ST|8886-4^HEART RATE METHOD^LN||MANUAL BY PALP||||||F|...<cr>
```

Part of the patient's history

```
            OBR|5|P8568^OE|HX2230^CLN||2000^HISTORY| ||198703290800||401

0^INTERN^JOE^^^^MD^L||...<cr>

OBX|1|CE|8661-1^CHIEF COMPLAINT^LN||...<cr>

OBX|2|ST|8674-4^HISTORY SOURCE^LN||PATIENT||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|3|TX|8684-3^PRESENT ILLNESS^LN||SUDDEN ONSET OF CHEST PAIN. 2 DAYS,

   PTA ASSOCIATED WITH NAUSEA, VOMITING \T\ SOB.  NO RELIEF WITH ANTACIDS

   OR NTG. NO OTHER SX. NOT PREVIOUSLY ILL.||||||F|...<cr>

 .

 .
```

and so on.

7.5.5 Reporting cultures and susceptibilities

7.5.5.1 Culture battery/report representation

Organisms and other observations/tests are reported using multiple OBX segments. The granularity expected for HL7culture reports is one observation per organism.

All OBX segments which have the same observation ID and sub-ID are part of a single observation.

Each organism in a culture battery is assigned a unique *OBX-4-observation sub-ID* (and is therefore a separate observation). The organism name is given in *OBX-5-observation value* (results). It is recommended, but not required, that the organism name may change over time, but the corresponding observation sub-ID never changes. (The observation ID will be identical for all organisms reported.)

Recommended:

```
OBX|1|CE|organism^413^L|1|^E. Coli||||||F|...<cr>
OBX|2|CE|organism^413^L|2|^S. Aureus||||||F|...<cr>
```

Not recommended:

```
OBX|1|CE|organism1^413^L|1|^E. Coli||||||F|...<cr>
OBX|2|CE|organism2^413^L|1|^S. Aureus||||||F|...<cr>
```

7.5.5.2 Susceptibility battery/report representation

Each antimicrobial should be reported as a separate (OBX) observation where the Observation ID is a code for the antimicrobial. (OBXs for non-antimicrobials observations and related information may be present in the same battery.)

MIC and disk diffusion (Kirby Bauer) susceptibility results can be combined in the same OBX segment. An OBX can contain a MIC value (in *OBX-5-observation value* (results)) and *OBX-8-abnormal flag* that indicates whether the organism is sensitive, resistant, or intermediate (see *HL7 table 0078- Abnormal flags* under abnormal flag fields).

Or, an OBX can contain a disk diffusion result string (e.g., **sensitive**) in the Observation Results field and the disk diffusion interpretation in *OBX-8-abnormal flags* (e.g., **S**).

A susceptibility battery may only contain results corresponding to a single organism that has been previously reported in a culture battery.

7.5.5.3 Identification of the organism for a susceptibility battery

The following is the preferred, but not required method of organizing data about antimicrobial susceptibility.

A susceptibility battery may only contain results corresponding to a single organism that has been previously reported in a culture battery.

A susceptibility battery is always a child order to a culture battery. *OBR-29-parent* (parent's filler order number) in the susceptibility OBR is equal to *OBR-3-filler order number* in the parent culture OBR and is used to link the two batteries logically.

The susceptibility battery also contains a linkage back to a particular organism in the culture battery. *OBR-26-parent result* of the susceptibility OBR contains two components--*OBX-3-observation identifier* (code only) and *OBX-4-observation sub-ID* of the OBX in the culture battery which contains the organism name.

The identity of an organism/isolate is expected to be refined over time. When an organism identification changes, the parent culture battery can be resent without resending the child susceptibility battery.

The case may occur where a susceptibility battery is reported on an organism which has not yet been identified. In this case, it is required that a placeholder OBX for the organism name be reported in the corresponding culture battery so that *OBR-26-parent result* in the susceptibility OBR will point to a valid organism OBX in the culture battery. Transmission of an organism OBX (in the culture battery) with the Sub-ID field valued must precede the susceptibility battery which uses the identical Sub-ID in *OBR-26-parent result*.

Discussion and examples:

Order micro results (blood culture)

```
MSH|^~\&|LAB1||DESTINATION||19910127105114||ORU^R01|LAB1003929|...<cr>
PID|...<cr>
PV1|...<cr>
ORC|NW|...<cr>
OBR|1|A485388^OE|H29847^LAB1|1234^BLOOD CULTURE|||...<cr>
```

Result for culture

```
ORC|RE|...<cr>
OBR|1|A485388^OE|H29847^LAB1|1234^BLOOD CULTURE||...<cr>
OBX|1|FT|SDES^SOURCE||BLOOD-RAPID||||||F|...<cr>
OBX|2|FT|EXAM^MICROSCOPIC||GRAM POSITIVE COCCI IN GROUPS||||||F|...<cr>
OBX|3|FT|600-7^MICROORGANISM IDENTIFIED^LN|1|ISOLATE 1||||||F|...<cr>
```

Result for susceptibility

```
ORC|RE|...<cr>
OBR|1|A485388^OE|H29848^LAB1|BT1^SUSCEPTIBILITY BATTERY||||||123^MANSFIELD^CHARLES|
    ||||||||||||||||600-7&MICROORGANISM IDENTIFIED&LN
    ^1|||A485388&OE^H29847&LAB1|...<cr>
OBX|1|NM|6932-8^PENICILLIN^LN||0.5|||R|||F|...<cr>
OBX|2|NM|347-5^NAFCILLIN^LN||1|||R|||F|...<cr>
OBX|3|ST|193-3^CLINDAMYCIN^LN||<=0.1|||S|||F|...<cr>
```

Result for Culture ID

```
ORC|RE|...<cr>
OBR|1|A485388^OE|H29847^LAB1|1234^BLOOD CULTURE||...<cr>
OBX|1|FT|600-7^ MCIROORGANISM IDENTIFIED^LN |1|STAPH EPI||||||F|...<cr>
```

New result for culture ID

```
ORC|RE|...<cr>
OBR|1|A485388^OE|H29847^LAB1|1234^BLOOD CULTURE||...<cr>
OBX|1|FT|600-7^MCIROORGANISM IDENTIFIED^LN|1|STAPH EPI SERO TYPE 3||||||F|...<cr>
```

Assumptions

1. All OBXs in the parent order must employ the same coding scheme.
2. The Sub-ID of the parent OBXs (result) cannot change.

7.5.6 EKG results reporting

Suppose an order has been placed to the EKG system for three EKGs to be performed on successive days. These results can be reported in various ways.

1. The EKG application needs to communicate to anyone the results of the 1st EKG:

ORU message:

```
MSH|...<cr>
```

```
PID|...<cr>
OBR|1||89-551^EKG|93000^EKG REPORT|...<cr>          // 1ST child OBR.
OBX|1|ST|93000.1^VENTRICULAR RATE (EKG)|...<cr>
OBX|2|ST|93000.2^|...<cr>
 ...
 ...
OBX|14|FT|93000.14^EKG COMMENT|...<cr>
OBR|...<cr>                                          // other observation segments to
    follow
```

- Notice that this report is without reference to the original order.

- No ORC is required because the identifying Fillers Order Number (and other ORC fields) are carried in the OBR segment.

2. The EKG application needs to communicate to anyone the original order information, the details of the child orders, the fact of the child spin off, and the results of all three EKGs:

ORU message:

```
MSH|...<cr>
PID|...<cr>
ORC|PA|A226677^OE|89-450^EKG|...<cr>            // original order's ORC.
OBR|1|||93000^EKG REPORT|...<cr>          // original order segment
ORC|CH|A226677^OE|89-451^EKG|...<cr>            // 1st child ORC.
OBR|1|||93000^EKG REPORT|...<cr>          // 1st EKG child OBR.
OBX|1|ST|...<cr>                           // 1st EKG report
OBX|2|ST|...<cr>
 ...
OBX|14|FT|...<cr>
ORC|CH|A226677^OE|89-452^EKG|...<cr>            // 2nd child ORC.
OBR|1|||93000^EKG REPORT|...<cr>          // 2nd EKG child OBR.
OBX|1|ST|...<cr>                           // 2nd EKG report
OBX|2|ST|...<cr>
 ...
OBX|14|FT|...<cr>
ORC|CH|A226677^OE|89-453^EKG|...<cr>            // 3rd child ORC.
OBR|1|||93000^EKG REPORT|...<cr>          // 3rd EKG child OBR.
OBX|1|ST|...<cr>                           // 3rd EKG report
OBX|2|ST|...<cr>
 ...
OBX|14|FT|...<cr>
    ...                              // Other parts of message might follow.
```

In this case, we are transmitting the information about the fact of child spin off, the original order and the results all at the same time. Thus, this form of the ORU message reports not only the results of an order, but all of its associated ordering information including the original OBR for three EKGs that was replaced by three separate OBR EKG segments.

7.5.7 Patient-specific clinical data with an order

Reporting body weight and height with a creatinine clearance.

```
MSH|...<cr>
PID|...<cr>
ORC|NW|...<cr>                              // New order.
OBR|1|P42^PC||2164-2^CREATININE RENAL CLEARANCE: QN^LN|...<cr>
OBX|1|NM|3141-9^BODY WEIGHT:^LN||62|kg|...<cr>
OBX|2|NM|3137-7^BODY HEIGHT:^LN||190|cm|...<cr>
ORC|NW|...<cr>                              // Next order.
```

7.6 CLINICAL TRIALS

Academic medical institutions, academic research coordinating centers, and industry-based research organizations often have computer systems that support registration, compliance and safety monitoring, and outcomes analysis for clinical trials. Patients on these trials may receive their treatment and evaluation at one research facility or at many different medical facilities. Clinical trials systems could message other applications that a patient is registered on a clinical trial. Several functional examples follow: (1) Some of the data required to monitor or analyze outcomes on the trial are generated in other medical computer systems, such as pharmacy, laboratory, or clinical applications. These applications may tag patients on clinical trials so that data may be sent back to the clinical trials system. (2) Order entry systems could also use patient registration information: they could display standard order sets for the protocol or particular treatment/evaluation phases of a complex protocol. They could pass the clinical trials status on to service provider applications to initiate a results report to the clinical trials system. It could also be passed to billing applications that may use specialized procedures for research-related costs. (3) Nursing and pharmacy systems can use information on patients' clinical trials status for care plans or dispensing authorization (auxiliary to the physician's prescription), respectively. There could be many other uses of this message since a patient's involvement on a clinical trial affects all concurrent medical care.

To meet monitoring and analysis requirements, patient registration, treatment, diagnostic, and study summary data are reported to study sponsors like pharmaceutical or medical device companies, regulatory agencies, and data management centers for collaborative studies. Automated procedures must be used to transfer these voluminous data among the participant computer systems in a cost-efficient and timely manner. The following additions to HL7 aim to specify standard messaging transactions to automate such reporting as well as to enable communication of clinical trials registration data to relevant medical applications as described above.

The objectives of the clinical trials messages and segments are to identify that patients are registered on clinical trials, have entered a study-specific phase of treatment or evaluation, or to indicate the study protocol's data schedule. Messages include OBR (Section 4.5.1, "OBR - observation request segment"), OBX (Section 7.4.2, "OBX - observation/result segment"), RXA (Section 4.8.14, "RXA - pharmacy /treatment administration segment"), and RXR (Section 4.8.3, "RXR - pharmacy/treatment order segment") segments to report observations or drug administration that are relevant to the study. In addition to study-related clinical data, OBX segments may contain the results of study variables according to master code tables such as the Health Outcomes Variables (HL7 Implementation Guide). There are also master segments to describe the clinical trial, its treatment phases, and its scheduled date-time points for message recipients. These are analogous to the Test/Observation Master Segments (Chapter 8), with the trials, phases, or scheduled time points treated as the OMX treats observation identifiers.

7.6.1 Glossary

7.6.1.1 Clinical trial:

A scientifically rigorous study of individual outcomes to some process of healthcare intervention. Clinical trials usually involve medical treatments so this document will use the term *treatment*, rather than the broader term *intervention*. A clinical trial design may randomly assign and compare one treatment approach with another, or generate safety and efficacy data on a single treatment approach. The clinical trial has a protocol for the patient's course of treatment and/or evaluation. There is usually a schedule for collection of data to measure compliance, safety, and outcomes.

7.6.1.2 Phase of a clinical trial:

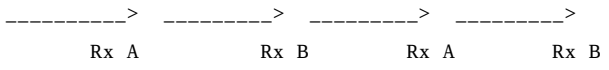
A treatment and/or observation interval of a clinical trial. A phase may represent an interval with a specific treatment regimen assigned randomly or otherwise, with each regimen of a progression of treatments, or with an evaluation component only. Generally, for each phase, there is an explicit patient management, evaluation, and data collection schedule. Each of these phases may have associated safety, outcome, and quality-control variables. A simpler study design need not use the phase structures.

The phase structure serves several purposes in the clinical trials messages. Other computer systems may need to know that the patient has begun a phase with a particular treatment regimen or diagnostic schedule, such as the pharmacy or order entry systems. When reporting study data, observations and variables often describe particular phase instances. For example, each course of treatment may have its own values for the same set of observations or variables. Phase instances may also have distinct data schedules that need to be linked to submitted data.

Several examples follow with each line depicting a phase.

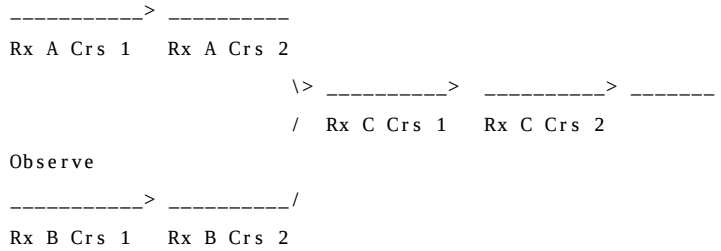
7.6.1.2.1 Example 1

Alternating treatment plus observation intervals:



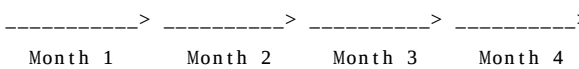
7.6.1.2.2 Example 2

Random assignment to two courses each of treatment A or B, all responding patients to treatment C, continue with observation and a diagnostic regimen after all treatment phases are completed. Treatment phases include the evaluation component for that course of treatment:



7.6.1.2.3 Example 3

Random assignment to placebo or treatment A, both taken daily and evaluated monthly.



7.6.1.3 Data schedule:

The treatment, diagnostic, and procedural requirements, as well as data collection due dates, scheduled on a timeline for most clinical trials. As data are reported, they may need to reflect the scheduled time point that they satisfy. Clinical trials quality control requires attention to compliance between the protocol's schedule and patient data records.

The data schedule will be keyed by time points relative to the study. Some data may be due prior to and at the conclusion of the study and/or one or more of its phases. Some are interim within the study or its phases depending on protocol events such as administration of treatment, arbitrary time intervals instated to make and record assessments, or some clinical milestone such as relapse of disease. Often, multiple data parameters are scheduled at the same time point. Several examples follow:

7.6.1.3.1 Schedule for a randomized cancer prevention trial

			Treatment 1st - 3rd Years															
	Reg	Rand	Months															
			3	6	9	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84
Disease Staging	X																	
H & P	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Assess Adverse Events and Outcome Variables	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Chest PAL X-ray	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
CBC, Diff, Plt	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X		X		X		X
SMA 12	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X		X		X		X
Cholesterol and Triglyceride	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
Electrolytes	X																	
Plasma Retinoic Acid	X	X																
Cotinine Level (nonsmokers)		X																

7.6.1.3.2 Schedule for a cancer chemotherapy trial

		Prior to Each Cycle		Every 3	
	Prestudy		During Cycle	Cycles	End Study
Informed Consent	X	X			
H & P Neurologic	X1				X
Vital Signs	X1		X2		X
Disease Staging	X	X3			X
ECG	X1		X4		
Radiology*		X		X5	X
Chest X-ray	X	X			X

Bone Marrow Bx.	X6				
HCG	X1				
Assess Adverse Events		X			X
CBC, Diff, Plt	X1			X7	X
UA, PT, PTT	X1				X
SMA12, Mg, CEA	X1	X			X

1. Within 3 days prior to start of infusion.
2. At 0,10,30, and 60 minutes after start of drug administration and one-half hour after test drug infusion ends for cycles 1 and 2. For subsequent cycles at 0 and 10 minutes after start of drug administration, and at the end of infusion.
3. Record tumor measurements at the end of every cycle if assessable clinically by physical examination or with simple X-ray.
4. Continuous ECG monitoring during infusion if necessary, due to bradycardia (<50 beats/min) or other significant cardiac findings.
5. When measurable disease requires complex radiologic studies such as CT or radionucleide scans.
6. To be done at baseline (if clinically indicated) at the option of the investigator and also during study if patient has prolonged myelosuppression (WBC<2000 cells/mm3>14 days).
7. Blood counts will be done twice weekly during cycles 1 and 2, then weekly.

* Radionucleide scan and X-ray of the bones, CT scans of the chest, pelvis, and brain only when clinically indicated.

7.6.1.3.3 Schedule for a randomized pain medication trial

	Day 1 Before RX	Day 1 After RX	Daily	Day 30
H & P	X			X
Creat, Bili, SGOT	X			
Urinalysis	X			
Pain Diagnosis	X			
Opioid Dose Strand	X	X	X	X
Non-opioid Analgesic		X	X	X
Medications for Side Effects		X	X	X
Phone Report: Pain and Side Effects			X	
Visual Analog Scales	X	X	X	X
Pain Evaluation Form	X			X

7.7 CLINICAL TRIALS - TRIGGER EVENTS AND MESSAGE DEFINITIONS

The event type will be carried in the message header segment.

7.7.1 CRM - clinical study registration message (events C01-C08)

The data are entered in a clinical trials or other patient data system and broadcast to other facility systems such as order entry, pharmacy, accounting, and nursing systems. They can be transmitted in batch mode or broadcast to outside-facility computer systems, including diagnostic and patient management systems. It is assumed that proper routing and security mechanisms are in place.

Event	Description
C01	Register a patient on a clinical trial
C02	Cancel a patient registration on clinical trial (for clerical mistakes since an intended registration should not be canceled)
C03	Correct/update registration information
C04	Patient has gone off a clinical trial
C05	Patient enters phase of clinical trial
C06	Cancel patient entering a phase (clerical mistake)
C07	Correct/update phase information
C08	Patient has gone off phase of clinical trial

CRM^C01-C08^CRM_C01	Clinical Study Registration Message	Chapter
MSH	Message Header	2
{		
PID	Patient Identification	3
[PV1]	Patient Visit	3
CSR	Clinical Study Registration	7
{[CSP]}	Clinical Study Phase	7
}		

7.7.2 CSU - unsolicited study data message (events C09-C12)

Data are entered in the clinical trials system or may reside in laboratory, pathology, radiology, pharmacy and/or other clinical applications. Most clinical trials data - clinical observations and study variables - will be communicated in OBR and OBX segments. The CSR, CSP, and CSS segments will identify the specific association these OBR and OBX have to the clinical trial. Data can be broadcast or transmitted in batch mode to study sponsors or the data management center for collaborative studies.

Event	Description
C09	Automated time intervals for reporting, like monthly
C10	Patient completes the clinical trial
C11	Patient completes a phase of the clinical trial
C12	Update/correction of patient order/result information

CSU^C09-C12^CSU_C09	Unsolicited Study Data Message	Chapter
MSH	Message Header	2
{	*PID repeat group open*	
PID	Patient Identification	3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics	3
[{NTE}]	Notes and comments	2
[	*PV1 optional group open*	

CSU^C09-C12^CSU_C09	Unsolicited Study Data Message	Chapter
PV1	Patient Visit	3
[PV2]	Patient Visit - Additional Info	3
]	*PV1 optional group close*	
CSR	Clinical Study Registration	7
{	*CSP repeat group open*	
[CSP]	Clinical Study Phase	7
{	*CSS repeat group open*	
[CSS]	Clinical Study Data Schedule	7
{	*ORC repeat group open*	
[ORC]	Common Order	4
OBR	Observation Battery	7
{OBX}	Observation Results	7
}	*ORC repeat group close*	
{	*ORC repeat group open*	
[ORC]	Common Order	4
{	*RXA repeat group open*	
RXA	Pharmacy Administration	4
RXR	Pharmacy Route	4
}	*RXA repeat group close*	
}	*ORC repeat group close*	
}	*CSS repeat group close*	
}	*CSP repeat group close*	
}	*PID repeat group close*	

7.8 CLINICAL TRIALS – SEGMENT DEFINITIONS

7.8.1 CSR - clinical study registration segment

The CSR segment will contain fundamental administrative and regulatory information required to document a patient's enrollment on a clinical trial. This segment is all that is required if one needs to message another system that an enrollment has taken place, i.e., from clinical trials to pharmacy, accounting, or order entry systems. The CSR segment may also be used to identify that OBR, OBX, RXA, and RXR segments that follow represent data applicable to the identified study.

HL7 Attribute Table – CSR – Clinical Study Registration

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	60	EI	R			01011	Sponsor Study ID
2	60	EI	O			01036	Alternate Study ID
3	250	CE	O			01037	Institution Registering the Patient
4	30	CX	R			01038	Sponsor Patient ID
5	30	CX	O			01039	Alternate Patient ID - CSR
6	26	TS	R			01040	Date/Time Of Patient Study Registration
7	250	XCN	O	Y		01041	Person Performing Study Registration
8	250	XCN	R	Y		01042	Study Authorizing Provider
9	26	TS	C			01043	Date/time Patient Study Consent Signed
10	250	CE	C			01044	Patient Study Eligibility Status
11	26	TS	O	Y/3		01045	Study Randomization Date/time
12	250	CE	O	Y/3		01046	Randomized Study Arm
13	250	CE	O	Y/3		01047	Stratum for Study Randomization
14	250	CE	C			01048	Patient Evaluability Status
15	26	TS	C			01049	Date/time Ended Study
16	250	CE	C			01050	Reason Ended Study

7.8.1.0 CSR field definitions

7.8.1.1 CSR-1 Sponsor study ID (EI) 01011

```
Components:  <entity identifier (ST)> ^ <namespace ID (IS)> ^ <universal ID (ST)> ^ <universal ID
             type (ID).
```

Definition: The field contains the universal identifier for the clinical trial. Since many clinical trials are collaborative and multi-centered, and since one goal of these standards is to promote automated data exchange among sites, the primary identifier should come from the sponsor. The coding system component may reference the sponsor. Example:

```
T93-0807^NCI (where NCI refers to the National Cancer Institute).
```

7.8.1.2 CSR-2 Alternate study ID (EI) 01036

```
Components:  <entity identifier (ST)> ^ <namespace ID (IS)> ^ <universal ID (ST)> ^ <universal ID
             type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains an alternate identifier that may be used as agreed upon by messaging parties. For example, the sending application may code its internal study number here.

7.8.1.3 CSR-3 Institution registering the patient (CE) 01037

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
             (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field distinguishes the institution where registration occurred. The legal approval to give patients access to a trial lies with the Internal Review Board for the institution. Universal healthcare provider facility codes should be used when they exist. Currently coding systems must be devised by users.

7.8.1.4 CSR-4 Sponsor patient ID (CX) 01038

```
Components: <ID (ST)> ^ <check digit (ST)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)>
             ^ < assigning authority (HD)> ^ <identifier type code (ID)> ^ < assigning facility (HD)
             ^ <effective date (DT)> ^ <expiration date (DT)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> * <universal ID type
             (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning facility: <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> * <universal ID type
             (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the main patient identification for the study. The sponsor patient ID allows automation of records on patients treated at various institutions. The sponsor patient ID should be unique for each patient participating on the study identified in *CSR-1-sponsor study ID*.

7.8.1.5 CSR-5 Alternate patient ID - CSR (CX) 01039

```
Components: <ID (ST)> ^ <check digit (ST)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)>
             ^ < assigning authority (HD)> ^ <identifier type code (ID)> ^ < assigning facility (HD)
             ^ <effective date (DT)> ^ <expiration date (DT)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> * <universal ID type
             (ID)>
```

```
Subcomponents of assigning facility: <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> * <universal ID type
            (ID)>
```

Definition: This field may be the sending application's patient identification. Coding conventions may be used as agreed upon by users.

7.8.1.6 CSR-6 Date/time patient of patient study registration (TS) 01040

Definition: This field contains the date of the patient registration is mandatory. The time component is optional. The time stamp for a registration may be useful. For example, patients may be randomized at the pharmacy according to the order in which they were registered.

7.8.1.7 CSR-7 Person performing study registration (XCN) 01041

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, use instead of the CN data type.  <ID number (ST)> ^ <family
            name (FN)> ^ <given name (ST)> ^ <second or further given names or initials thereof
            (ST)> ^ <suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <degree (e.g., MD)
            (IS)> ^ <source table (IS)> ^ <assigning authority (HD)> ^ <name type code (ID)>  ^
            <identifier check digit (ST)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)>
            ^ <identifier type code (IS)> ^ <assigning facility (HD)> ^ <name representation code
            (ID)> ^ <name context (CE)> ^ <name validity range (DR)> ^ < name assembly order (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type
            (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning facility ID:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID
            type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the healthcare facility employee who actually phoned, submitted a form, or interactively registered the patient on the clinical trial. This is generally done under authorization from the attending physician or a principal or collaborating investigator.

7.8.1.8 CSR-8 Study authorizing provider (XCN) 01042

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, use instead of the CN data type.  <ID number (ST)> ^ <family
            name (FN)> ^ <given name (ST)> ^ <second or further given names or initials thereof
            (ST)> ^ <suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <degree (e.g., MD)
            (IS)> ^ <source table (IS)> ^ <assigning authority (HD)> ^ <name type code (ID)>  ^
            <identifier check digit (ST)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)>
            ^ <identifier type code (IS)> ^ <assigning facility (HD)> ^ <name representation code
            (ID)> ^ <name context (CE)> ^ <name validity range (DR)> ^ < name assembly order (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type
            (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning facility ID:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID
            type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the healthcare provider, generally the attending physician, who is accountable that the patient is eligible for the trial and has signed an informed consent. National standard healthcare provider codes should be used when they exist. This field is required for the patient registration trigger event (C01).

7.8.1.9 CSR-9 Date/time patient study consent signed (TS) 01043

Definition: This field contains the consent form signing date is collected to provide a checkpoint that the consent form was obtained. Since many trials involve unapproved drugs and other treatment modalities, the consent form is highly important to document and store. This field is required for the patient registration trigger event (C01). The time component is optional.

7.8.1.10 CSR-10 Patient study eligibility status (CE) 01044

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field indicates whether the patient was an appropriate candidate for the trial. It is important for quality control and data analysis. The code set will vary among clinical trials. An example answer set is: ***Yes, No, By Approval, Not Assessed, Unknown***. This field is required for the patient registration trigger event (C01).

7.8.1.11 CSR-11 Study randomization date/time (TS) 01045

Definition: This field contains the date the patient was randomized. The time component is optional. Up to three randomizations are supported. Sequential randomizations are listed in chronological order.

7.8.1.12 CSR-12 Randomized study arm (CE) 01046

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains codes that must be developed by users. The blind treatment assignment may be communicated as a dummy text: **^blind** or if a coded treatment assignment must also be communicated**: 1^blind^local_code**. If more than one randomization occurs, the second and third repetitions will correspond to the second and third repetitions of *CSR-11-study randomization date/time*, if they exist.

7.8.1.13 CSR-13 Stratum for study randomization (CE) 01047

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: Many studies have stratified randomization schemas. The strata codes must be developed for each clinical trial. This field is important for statistical analysis of the study results. The second and third repetitions will correspond to the second and third repetitions of *CSR-11-study randomization date/time* and *CSR-12-randomized study arm*, if they exist.

7.8.1.14 CSR-14 Patient evaluability status (CE) 01048

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field categorizes the inclusion of this patient's data for various analyses. The patient's data may be evaluable for analysis of adverse events but not for outcomes. Or it may be evaluable for some outcomes and not others. The coding systems will vary among trials. This field is required for the off-study trigger event (C04).

7.8.1.15 CSR-15 Date/time ended study (TS) 01049

Definition: This field contains the date the patient completes or is otherwise removed from the study. This field is required for the off-study event (C04). The time component is optional.

7.8.1.16 CSR-16 Reason ended study (CE) 01050

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This information is important for quality control and data analysis. The coding systems will vary among trials. An example answer set is: **Adverse Events, Completed Trial, Death, Drug Resistance, Intercurrent Illness, Lost to Follow up, No Response to Therapy, Noncompliance, Progression of Disease, Protocol Violation, Refused Further Therapy**. This field is required for the off-study trigger event (C04).

7.8.2 CSP - clinical study phase segment

The CSP segment contains information on a patient's status for a particular phase of the study. This segment is optional and is useful when a study has different evaluation intervals within it. (See Section 7.6.1.2, "Phase of a clinical trial:Phase of a Clinical Trial." The CSP segment is implemented on a study-specific basis for messaging purposes. The fact that the patient has entered a phase of the study that represents a certain treatment approach may need to be messaged to other systems, like pharmacy, nursing, or order entry. It is also important to sponsors and data management centers for tracking patient progress through the study and monitoring the data schedule defined for each phase. It may subsume OBR and OBX segments that follow it to indicate that these data describe the phase.

HL7 Attribute Table – CSP – Clinical Study Phase

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	250	CE	R			01022	Study Phase Identifier
2	26	TS	R			01052	Date/time Study Phase Began
3	26	TS	O			01053	Date/time Study Phase Ended
4	250	CE	C			01054	Study Phase Evaluability

7.8.2.0 CSP field definitions

7.8.2.1 CSP-1 Study phase Identifier (CE) 01022

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the phase of the study that a patient has entered. The set of codes will generally be developed for each clinical trial, although there are patterns that trials in particular disease or prevention categories may follow. The phase structure will be based on data collation and reporting needs for the study. It is an operational structure and need not be discussed in the clinical trial protocol documentation or even made known to patient care or data collection personnel. The coding system will usually be developed by the sponsor for multicentered clinical trials to standardize the receipt of automated data. Local codes could be added if an additional local message is desired. Otherwise, local coding conventions will be used. Example: `2^Init Rx, Crs 1^NCI T93-0807 Phases`

7.8.2.2 CSP-2 Date/time study phase began (TS) 01052

Definition: This field contains the date the patient began this phase interval. The time is optional.

7.8.2.3 CSP-3 Date/time study phase ended (TS) 01053

Definition: This field contains the date the patient ended this phase interval.

7.8.2.4 CSP-4 Study phase evaluability (CE) 01054

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains the disposition of the patient's data for this phase interval for quality control and data analysis purposes. The set of codes will vary across clinical trials. An example answer set: **Complete, Adverse Events Only, Outcome Only, None, Unknown**.

7.8.3 CSS - clinical study data schedule segment

The Clinical Study Data Schedule (CSS) segment is optional depending on whether messaging of study data needs to be linked to the scheduled data time points for the study. (See Section 7.6.1.3, "data schedule.") The CSS segment enables communication of data schedules and adherence that ranges from the basic to the elaborate. Use of the segment must be planned for each implementation. Each CSS segment will subsume observation and drug administration segments that follow, indicating that they satisfy this scheduled time point.

HL7 Attribute Table – CSS – Clinical Study Data Schedule Segment

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	250	CE	R			01055	Study Scheduled Time Point
2	26	TS	O			01056	Study Scheduled Patient Time Point
3	250	CE	O	Y/3		01057	Study Quality Control Codes

7.8.3.0 CSS field definitions

7.8.3.1 CSS-1 Study scheduled time point (CE) 01055

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains the time point for which some instance of data for the clinical trial was scheduled. The time point may be expressed in any coded format. Some examples of time point values are: **Prestudy, Pretreatment, 4 times/day, Weekly, Every 3 days, Every course, At Relapse, At Off Study.** Alternatively, frequency values from Section 4.4.2, "Interval component (CM)," (the Interval component of the TQ Timing/Quantity data type could be used.) Time point naming conventions and usage must be specified by implementers.

7.8.3.2 CSS-2 Study scheduled patient time point (TS) 01056

Definition: This field contains the date/time that the scheduled time point should occur for this patient. The date/time may be used for a reference in reviewing the actual dates on which scheduled items that follow in OBR segments occur for the patient. The time component is optional.

7.8.3.3 CSS-3 Study quality control codes (CE) 01057

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: In clinical settings, the **actual** date of a treatment or procedure may vary considerably from the **due** date. Various coding systems may be used to evaluate the adherence to the schedule or acceptability of the data. Coding systems will vary among trials.

7.8.4 CTI - clinical trial identification segment

The CTI segment is an optional segment that contains information to identify the clinical trial, phase and time point with which an order or result is associated.

HL7 Attribute Table – CTI – Clinical Trial Identification

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	60	EI	R			01011	Sponsor Study ID
2	250	CE	C			01022	Study Phase Identifier
3	250	CE	O			01055	Study Scheduled Time Point

7.8.4.0 CTI field definitions

7.8.4.1 CTI-1 Sponsor study ID (EI) 01011

```
Components:  <entity identifier (ST)> ^ <namespace ID (IS)> ^ <universal ID (ST)> ^ <universal ID
             type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the universal identifier for the clinical trial. The coding system is as described in *CSR-1-sponsor study ID*.

7.8.4.2 CTI-2 Study phase identifier (CE) 01022

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the phase of the study that a patient has entered. See *CSP-1-study phase* identifier for details of coding systems.

7.8.4.3 CTI-3 Study scheduled time point (CE) 01055

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field identifies a time point in the clinical trial phase. *CTI-2-study phase identifier* must be valued if *CTI-3-study scheduled time point* is valued. Should correspond to *CSS-1-study scheduled time point*.

7.8.5 CM0 clinical study master segment

The clinical study master segment (CMO) is described in Chapter 8 section 8.11.2.

7.8.6 CM1 clinical study phase master segment

The clinical study phase master segment (CMI) is described in Chapter 8, section 8.11.3.

7.8.7 CM2 clinical study schedule master segment

The clinical study schedule master segment is described in Chapter 8, section 8.11.4.

7.9 CLINICAL TRIALS – EXAMPLES OF USE

7.9.1 CRM - message when patient registered on a clinical trial

```
MSH|^~\&|PDMS|MDACC|ORDER ENTRY|MDACC|200006021649||CRM^C01|...<cr>

PID|1||223892||King^Sally^Brown||19530117|...<cr>

CSR|DM94-004^MDACC||MDACC|3||19941013||342^^^^^^^PDMS|
    |||||1005^^^^^^^MDACC|19941013|Y^Meets All Requirements^PDMS|...<cr>
```

7.9.2 CRM - message when patient begins a phase of a clinical trial

```
MSH|^~\&|PDMS|MDACC|PHARM|MDACC|200006050925||CRM^C05|...<cr>

PID|1||352352||West^Mary^L.||19230213|...<cr>

CSR|ID91-025^MDACC||MDACC|301||19941005||342^^^^^^^PDMS |||19941201|2^blind^PDMS|
        12^Smoker,Stage II,<60^PDMS|...<cr>

CSP|2^Treatment^PDMS|19941201|...<cr>
```

7.9.3 CSU - message reporting monthly patient data updates to the sponsor

```
MSH|^~\&|PDMS|MDACC|CTMS|NCI|200006050927||CSU^C09|...<cr>

PID|1||235925||J^F^M||19350616|...<cr>
                  [note:anonymous]

CSR|T93-080^NCI|ID93-030^^MDACC|MDACC|14||19941205|...<cr>

CSS|^Prestudy|19941204|C^compliant^NCI<cr>

OBR|1|1234|1234|3^EligibilChecklist^StudyFormsList|||19941205|...<cr>
```

Note: The clinical trials section probably needs its own definition of OBR. OBR-2&3 have condition rules indicating that the placer and filler numbers must be present in either the ORC or the OBR. Since an ORC is not present, then these fields must be populated in the OBR. My guess is that clinical trials aren't interested in the placer and filler number.

```
OBX|1|CE|ELIG1^Elig Crit 1^NCI|Text Elig Crit 1|Y|...<cr>

OBX|2|CE|ELIG2^Elig Crit 2^NCI||Y|...<cr>

OBR|2|1235|1235|4^Prestudy Form^StudyFormsList|||19941205|...<cr>

OBX|1|CE|QOL^Quality of Life^NCI||2\T\3\T\2\T\4\T\2^SPITZER|...<cr>

OBX|2|CE|PRICHEM^Prior Chemo^NCI||Yes|...<cr>

OBX|3|CE|PRIBIOL^Prior Biologics^NCI||No|...<cr>

OBX|4|NM|NUMREM^Number Prior Remissions^NCI||2|...<cr>

OBR|3|932^OE|243789^LAB|88304^SURG PATH REPORT|||19940101|...<cr>

OBX|1|CE|88304&ANT|1|9999^PANCREAS^SNM|...<cr>

OBX|2|CE|88304&IMP|2|9999^ADENOCARCINOMA^SNM|...<cr>
```

```
OBR|4|933^OE|243790^LAB|85022^CBC|||199412050800|...<cr>
OBX|1|NM|718-7^HEMOGLOBIN:^LN||13.4|GM/DL|14-18|N||S|F|19860522|...<cr>
```

[cbc values]

```
OBX|2|NM|4544-3^HEMATOCRIT:^LN||40.3|%|42-52|L||S|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|3|NM|789-8^ERYTHROCYTES:^LN||4.56|10*6/ml|4.7-6.1|L||S|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|4|NM|787-22^ERYTHROCYTE MEAN CORPUSCULAR VOLUME:^LN||88|fl   |80-
    94|N||S|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|5|NM|785-6^ERYTHROCYTE MEAN CORPUSCULAR HEMOGLOBIN:^LN||29.5|pg   |27-
    31|N||N|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|6|NM|786-4^ERYTHROCYTE MEAN CORPUSCULAR HEMOGLOBIN CONCENTRATION:^LN||33|%|33-
    37|N||N|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|7|NM|6690-2^LEUKOCYTES:^LN||10.7|10*3/ml|4.8-10.8|N||N|F|19860522|...<cr>
OBX|8|NM|764-1^NEUTROPHILS BAND FORM/100 LEUKOCYTES:^LN||2|%|||||F|...<cr>
OBX|9|NM|769-0^NEUTROPHILS SEGMENTED/100 LEUKOCYTES:^LN||67|%|||||F |...<cr>
OBX|10|NM|736-9^LYMPHOCYTES/100 LEUKOCYTES:^LN||29|%|||||F|...<cr>
OBX|11|NM|5905-5^MONOCYTES/100 LEUKOCYTES:^LN||1|%|||||F|...<cr>
OBX|12|NM|713-8^EOSINOPHILS/100 LEUKOCYTES:^LN||2|%|||||F|...<cr>
OBR|5|934^OE|243791^LAB|80004^ELECTROLYTES|||199412050800|...<cr>
OBX|1|NM|2947-0^SODIUM:^LN||150|mmol/l|136-148|H||A|F|19850301 |...<cr>
OBX|2|NM|2823-3^POTASSIUM:^LN||4.5|mmol/l|3.5-5|N||N|F|19850301|...<cr>
```

[electrolytes values]

```
OBX|3|NM|2069-3^CHLORIDE:^LN||102|mmol/l|94-105|N||N|F|19850301|...<cr>
OBX|4|NM|2028-9^CARBON DIOXIDE.TOTAL:^LN||27|mmol/l|24-31|N||N|F
    |19850301|...<cr>
CSP|^Course 1|19941205|19950120|Y^Toxicity and Response^NCI |...<cr>
CSS|^Course Completion|19950120|...<cr>
OBR|1|935^OE|243791^LAB|2039-6^CARCINOEMBRYONIC AG:^LN|||19941008|...<cr>
          OBX|1|NM|2039-6^CARCINOEMBRYONIC AG:^LN||15.2|IU |...<cr>
OBR|2|1236|1236|10^Course Completion Form^StudyPhaseFormsList|||19950120 |...<cr>
OBX|1|CE|CRSRESP^Course Response^NCI||4^Partial Response|...<cr>
OBX|2|NM|DRUGDISP^Capsules Dispensed^NCI||60|...<cr>
OBX|3|NM|DRUGRETN^Capsules Returned^NCI||5|...<cr>
OBX|4|ID|DXCOMP^Diagnostic Tests Compliance^NCI||Y|...<cr>
OBX|5|CE|PERSTAT^Performance Status^NCI||3^ZUBRODS|...<cr>
OBR|3|1237|1237|9999^Adverse Events|...<cr>
OBX|1|CE|9999&EVENT|1|45^Vomiting^NCI|...<cr>
OBX|2|DT|9999&ONSET|1|19941215|...<cr>
OBX|3|DT|9999&RESOLUTION|1|19941217|...<cr>

OBX|4|CE|9999&GRADE|1|M^MODERATE|...<cr>
OBX|5|CE|9999&RELATION_TO_RX|1|L^LIKELY|...<cr>
OBX|6|CE|9999&EVENT|2|303^Dyspnea^NCI|...<cr>
OBX|7|DT|9999&ONSET|2|19941231|...<cr>
OBX|8|DT|9999&RESOLUTION|2|...<cr>
OBX|9|CE|9999&GRADE|2|MI^MILD|...<cr>
OBX|10|CE|9999&RELATION_TO_RX|2|U^UNLIKELY|...<cr>
```

[Note: Needs to maintain compatibility with ongoing product experience message efforts.]

[Note2: There are other possible OBX suffixes defined by FDA: APEX/ NADIR, ACTION, THERAPY, OUTCOME, RECHALLENGE.]

7.10 PRODUCT EXPERIENCE

Patients experience symptoms, manifest signs or develop diseases or syndromes while exposed to medical devices and/or drugs. Evidence suggests that some of these symptoms, signs, diseases or syndromes may develop as a consequence of the products used. Examples include the development of clear cell adenocarcinoma of the vagina in the daughters of mothers treated with diethylstilbestrol during pregnancy and gastrointestinal bleeding in patients treated with non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. While it is difficult to prove causality, strong evidence exists in many cases.

It is important to document such experiences during the development and testing of products to identify potential adverse effects but also during routine use of the product to identify serious adverse effects which occur infrequently. The latter is the realm of pharmacoepidemiology and post-marketing surveillance.

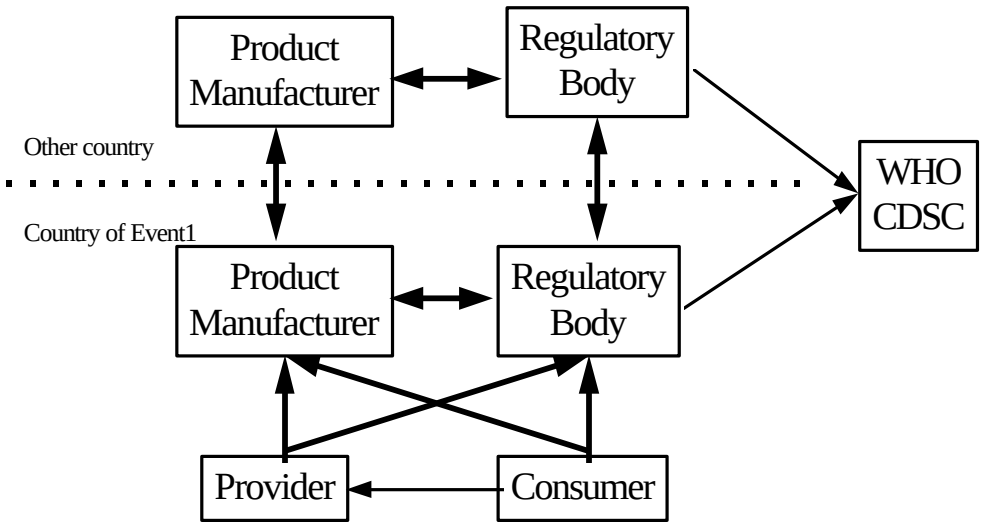
Adverse events are important for product manufacturers as signal generating hypotheses concerning drug kinetics or dynamics, often in special populations of patients. Adverse events are important for regulators in ensuring that manufacturers protect the public health in assessments of risk and benefits, including special populations, and that they promptly and thoroughly investigate individual events and clusters of events. Adverse events are especially important for practitioners and patients who always deal with a special population of one individual who may be having an event and a practitioner seeking information about related events seen with the same or similar products.

Reporting has usually focused on *serious* and *unexpected* events. Serious, if defined unambiguously, focuses attention on those events of most importance to the patient and practitioner. Expected events are those which prior experience has demonstrated to be probabilistically linked to the product and are generally included in product labeling.

Because of the risks associated with the uses of drugs and medical devices, a system of surveillance has been established in most developed countries. With globalization of the marketplace, the need to share this information across national boundaries has increased. Currently most reporting is performed using a series of forms, including CIOMS, yellow cards, the FDA's 1639 and MedWatch forms and the Japanese form, which are sent:

- from identified reporting sources to regulatory bodies
- from identified reporting sources to product manufacturers
- between regulatory bodies
- within product manufacturers
- within regulatory bodies
- from product manufacturers to regulatory bodies
- from regulatory bodies to the WHO Collaborative Drug Surveillance Center

Figure 7-8. - Flow of product experience information



Regardless of who originates a drug experience report, documentation of the experience eventually reaches the regulatory agencies. The manufacturer is mandated to alert the regulatory agency.

Electronic interchange of these data would reduce errors, decrease costs and speed communications.

7.10.1 Glossary

7.10.1.1 Drug:

Any chemical compound that may be used on or administered to humans or animals as an aid in the diagnosis, treatment or prevention of disease or other abnormal condition, for the relief of pain or suffering, or to control or improve any physiological condition (Dorland's Illustrated Medical Dictionary 27th edition).

7.10.1.2 Medical device:

Something contrived for or used in the diagnosis (vascular catheters), treatment (thermotherapy units) or prevention of disease or other abnormal condition, for the relief of pain or suffering or to control or improve any physiologic condition, including instrumentation and implanted devices (prosthetic cardiac valves, pacemakers, hip prostheses).

7.10.1.3 Product:

A drug or medical device.

7.10.1.4 Non-proprietary (generic) name:

Drug name that is not protected by a trademark, usually descriptive of its chemical structure; sometimes called a public name. In the US, most generic drug names are assigned by the US Adopted Name Council

(USAN). Other generic names in common use are the National Formulary (NF) and the US Pharmacopoeia (USP) names. Figure 7-*3* lists other available drug coding systems.

7.10.1.5 Trade (brand) name:

Proprietary names that are registered to protect the name for the sole use of the manufacturer holding the trademark.

7.10.1.6 Adverse event/adverse experience:

- Pre-marketing: Any untoward medical occurrence in a patient or clinical investigation subject administered a pharmaceutical product and which does not necessarily have a causal relationship with this treatment.
- Post-marketing/European Union: Any undesirable experience occurring to a patient treated with a pharmaceutical product whether or not considered related to the medicinal product.
- Post-marketing/US: Any adverse event associated with the use of a drug in humans, whether or not considered drug related, including the following: An adverse event occurring in the course of the use of a drug product in professional practice; an adverse event occurring from drug overdose; an adverse event occurring from drug withdrawal; and any failure of expected pharmacologic action.
- WHO: Any untoward medical occurrence that may present during treatment with a pharmaceutical product but which does not necessarily have a causal relationship with this product.

7.10.1.7 Adverse drug reaction:

- Pre-marketing: All noxious and unintended responses to a medicinal product related to any dose.
- Post-marketing/WHO: A response to a drug which is noxious and unintended, and which occurs at doses normally used in man for prophylaxis, diagnosis, or therapy of disease or for the modification of physiologic function
- Post-marketing/European Union: A reaction which is harmful and unintended and which occurs at doses normally used in man for the prophylaxis, diagnosis, or treatment of disease or the modification of physiological function.
- Post-marketing/US: Any undesirable effect reasonably associated with the use of the drug, that may occur as part of the pharmacological action of the drug or may be unpredictable.

7.10.1.8 Causation**:**

An exposure which truly does increase or decrease the probability of a certain outcome.

7.10.1.9 Causal relationship:

When an event occurs a product may be suspected as causing the event but rarely can it be proven particularly at an early stage of the product's life. Certain information about the relationship between the product and the event can reinforce the belief in a causal relationship between the product and the event while others can decrease the probability that there is a causal relationship.

7.10.1.10 Regulatory agency:

Many geopolitical entities have established agencies/authority responsible for regulating products used in health care. The agencies are collectively referred to as regulatory agencies.

7.10.1.11 Product manufacturer:

The organization which is responsible for the manufacture of a product. This will usually be the entity, which holds the marketing authorization for the product.

7.10.1.12 Holder of marketing authorization:

The organization which holds the authority to market a product. This will often be the organization, which manufactures the product.

7.10.1.13 Serious adverse product reaction:

An adverse product reaction which:

- is fatal (results in death)
- is life threatening
- requires hospitalization or prolongation of a hospitalization
- results in persistent or significant disability/incapacity
- results in a congenital anomaly/birth defect.

Medical and scientific judgment should be exercised in deciding whether expedited reporting is appropriate in other situations, such as important medical events that may not be immediately life threatening or result in hospitalization but may jeopardize the patient or may require intervention to prevent one of the other outcomes listed in the definition above. These should also be considered serious.

7.10.1.14 Expected adverse product reaction:

Expected events are those which prior experience has demonstrated to be probabilistically linked to the product and are generally included in product labeling.

Pre-marketing: An adverse reaction, the nature or severity of which is not consistent with the applicable product information (e.g., Investigator's Brochure for an unapproved investigational product).

Post-marketing/European Union: This relates to an adverse reaction which is not mentioned in any EC summary of product characteristics (SPC). In the absence of any European SPC, an international document prepared by the marketing authorization holder containing all relevant safety information which the marketing authorization holder considers should be listed for the medicinal product in all countries where the medicinal product is marketed (Care Data Sheet).

Post-marketing/US current: Unexpected means an adverse drug experience that is not listed in the current labeling for the drug product and includes an event that may be symptomatically and pathophysiologically related to an event listed in the labeling but differs from the event because of greater severity or specificity.

Post-marketing/US (proposed): The applicant's core safety data sheet shall be a document prepared by the applicant that contains all relevant safety information, including adverse drug experiences, which the applicant believes should e listed for the drug in all countries where the drug is marketed. It may be used by the applicant as the reference document by which an adverse drug experience is judged to be expected or unexpected for purposes of this post-marketing periodic report.

Post-marketing/WHO: An adverse reaction, the nature or severity of which is not consistent with domestic labeling or market authorization, or expected from characteristics of the drug.

7.10.2 References

Gabrielli ER. Standard specification for drug therapy documentation. ASTM Committee E31.12 July (1993).

Kessler DA. Introducing MEDWatch. JAMA 269: 2765-2768(1993).

Kurata JH, Overhage JM, Gabrielli E, Jones JK. International Data Standards for Hospital-based Drug Surveillance. M.D. Computing 12(1) 50-57 (1995).

Moore N, Montera d, Coulson R, DeAbajo F, Kreft-Jais C, Biron A, Monteaugudo J. The single case format: proposal for a structured message for the telematic transmission of information on individual case reports in pharmacovigilance. Pharmacoepidemiology and Drug Safety 3: 157-162 (1994)

Thompson WL. A modest proposal for enhancing the safety and effectiveness of use of human drugs, biologics and devices and animal health products with human health implications through cost-effective health informatics tools supporting a global database of safety reports as a joint ICH E2, M1 and M2 initiative. Private communication. March (1995)

7.11 PRODUCT EXPERIENCE - TRIGGER EVENTS AND MESSAGE DEFINITIONS

The message header segment will care one of three event types at *MSH-9-message type*.

Event	Description
P07	PEX - Unsolicited initial individual product experience report
P08	PEX - Unsolicited update individual product experience report
P09	SUR - Summary product experience report

7.11.1 PEX - product experience message (events P07, P08

The primary application of this message is to transfer information related to an adverse event occurring while a patient was exposed to a product.

PEX^P07-P08^PEX_P07	Product Experience Message	Chapter
MSH	Message Header	2
EVN	Event Type	3
PID	Patient Identification	3
[PD1]	Additional Demographics	3
[{NTE}]	Notes and comments	2
[PV1	Patient Visit	3
[PV2]]	Patient Visit - Additional Info	3
{		
PES	Product Experience Sender	7
{		
PEO	Product Experience Observation	7
{		
PCR	Potential Causal Relationship	7
[		
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order	4
[{RXR}]	Pharmacy/Treatment Route	4
]		
[{		
RXA	Pharmacy/Treatment Administration	4
[RXR]	Pharmacy/Treatment Route	4
}]		
[{PRB}]	Detail problem segment	12
[{OBX}]	Observation/Result Segment	7
[{NTE}]	Notes and comments	2
[		
NK1	Associated parties segment	2
[		
RXE	Pharmacy/Treatment Encoded Order	4
[{RXR}]	Pharmacy/Treatment Route	4
]		
[{		
RXA	Pharmacy/Treatment Administration	4
[RXR]	Pharmacy/Treatment Route	4
}]		
[{PRB}]	Detail Problem Segment	12
[{OBX}]	Observation/Results Segment	7
]		
[{		
CSR	Clinical study registration	7
[{CSP}]	Clinical study phase segment	7
}]		
}}}		

The PID segment provides the patient identification information including institutional identification numbers, date of birth and in the case of patients who die, information about their death. Patients are frequently identified only by their initials which can be represented in the PID segment, e.g. the initials JMO would appear as J^M^O in the name field of the PID segment. The EVN segment identifies the type of transaction that is being sent -- primarily it specifies who the sender is and implies which information is expected to be included in the message. A message sent from a healthcare provider, for example, might contain minimal information, while a message from a pharmaceutical manufacturer might contain nearly complete information.

The PES or Product Experience Sender segment provides information about the message sender and its knowledge of the event. The heart of the product experience message is the product experience observation (PEO) segment and the PCR segments clustered under it. The PEO segment identifies a clinical event and the PCR segments identify products which are potentially causally related to the event. There may be more than one product which is potentially related to the event so multiple PCR segments can be included. RXE and RXR segments can be repeated and provide information about the products the patient was exposed to at the time of the event (typically excluding those used to treat the event). Details about the administration of the products identified in the PCR segments should be described with RXE and RXR segments. Repeated PRB segments provide information about diagnoses which represent comorbid conditions. The repeated OBX segments are used to send patient observations such as height, weight, last menstrual period, and laboratory results. Analytical commentary can be included in the NTE

segment. This commentary will typically be the sender's analysis of the event and the potentially causally related products. Finally, the CSR and CSP segments can optionally be included if the event occurred during a formal clinical trial in order to describe the trial.

When a product experience relates to an exposure which occurred indirectly (transmammary or transplacentally for example), the individual experiencing the adverse effect — the fetus or child — would be described in the PID segment and the individual via which they are exposed in the NK1 segment. The first set of RXE segments would typically indicate the drugs which to which the fetus or child was exposed. Additional codes for the route are defined in this Appendix to allow the suspected routes of exposure to be represented. The second set of RXE/RXR segment - those clustered under the NK1 segment - would represent the route by which the mother or father was exposed to the drug. Early spontaneous abortion would normally be treated as an adverse effect on the mother rather than on the fetus, and the PID would refer to the mother. The second set of PRB/OBX segments reflects the problems/observations associated with the individual via which they were exposed.

Each message contains information about a single case including one patient (PID), at least one sender (PES), one or more events (PEO) and one or more suspected products (PCR and RXE/RXA) for a minimal message. The structure of the message allows actual administration information to be sent in the RXA if known; if administration information is unavailable, or the adverse reaction cannot be related to a single administration event, the RXE segment can be used to send prescription level information. Additional information may be included based on availability and regulatory requirements.

The MSH segment specifies the character set (*MSH-18*) and the language (*MSH-19*) used in the PEX message.

The PEX message is designed to accommodate required reporting of adverse product events to the responsible regulatory agencies. In the United States, the paper version of this report is Medwatch.

7.11.2 SUR - summary product experience report (event P09)

Sending summary reports related to products constitutes a P09 event.

SUR^P09^SUR_P09	Summary Product Experience Report	Chapter
MSH	Message Header	2
{		
FAC	Facility	7
{		
PSH	Product Summary Header	7
PDC	Product Detail Country	7
}		
PSH	Product Summary Header	7
{		
FAC	Facility	7
PDC	Product Detail Country	7
NTE	Notes (for PCR)	2
}		
ED	Encapsulated Data	2
}		

The Summary Product Experience Report message can be divided into two separate parts. Part 1 consists of a Facility segment which identifies the reporting organization, a Product Summary Header segment which provides summary information about the products and manufacturers, and a Product Detail Country segment which provides country specific product identification and marketing information. Part 2 consists of a repeating series of segments. These segments could be used to represent data about each model of a medical device (Part 2 of FDA Form 3417, for example). The Product Summary Header segment provides manufacturer's data, under which repeating sets of Facility segments (representing multiple manufacturing sites), a Product Detail Country segment (representing marketing and product

identification data) and the Note segment (for other commentary) may follow. Finally, the Encapsulated Data (ED) segment can be used to transmit images of documents, including any of the MIME (Multimedia Internet Mail Extension) support formats such as JPEG, GIF, and FAX.

Regulatory agencies require a variety of reports that are centered on the product, not on a single patient. Some of these reports request information just about the product, and some request information about the product combined with a summary of the product experience reports on that product. These are used by regulatory agencies to provide totals against which they can verify that they have received and processed all of the relevant reports, and to calculate denominators for computing event rates. If manufacturers begin to transmit these reports electronically and regulatory agencies in turn electronically confirm the receipt of such reports, the need for some of these summary reports will decline.

The SUR message provides a mechanism for sending a variety of different summary reports. In the United States, the Medical Device Reporting Annual Certification and the Medical Device Reporting Baseline Report are examples of such reports. Below, we use these two medical device reports to illustrate how one would map the contents of this kind of report to the SUR message.

Manufacturers are required to submit a Baseline Report (FDA Form 3417 of October, 1995 (when a device is first released. The focus of this report is a single product. The first part requests information about the manufacturer of the product (Questions 2a through 2g), e.g., the firm's name, street address, city, country, type of firm (e.g., manufacturer, distributor, both); the manufacturer's contact (Questions 3a through 3g). e.g., title, street address, city, state, phone number, and whether the firm is an organization of a foreign manufacturer. Most of this information can be transmitted as fields within the FAC (Facility segment - the first segment in the SUR message following the MSH). Question 1 (which asks the type of baseline report - initial or annual update) and Question 7 (the date of the report) are reported in the PSH (Product Summary Header) segment that follows the FAC segment in the SUR message. The second part of the Baseline Report form also includes information about the device name (Question 2), generic name (Question 3), device model number (Question 4), device catalogue number (Question 5), other device identifier (Question 6), product code (Question 7), and device family (Question 8), related device information (Question 9), the basis for marketing the device (Question 10), device life (Question 11), the date the device was first marketed (Question 12), the date the device ceased being marketed (Question 13), whether the device was the subject of a 522 study (Question 14), and the number of devices manufactured, distributed, and in current use (Question 15). All of these questions with the exception of #9 are represented in the PDC segment. Questions 16a and 16b are represented by nested PSH segments.

The Medical Device Reporting Annual Certification form consists of two parts. Part 12 transmits information describing the firm submitting the report (Questions 2a through 2h) and the individual who completed the report (Questions 3a through 3g). These questions are represented in the FAC segment. Question 1 (period covered by the certification) corresponds to the PSH segment. Part 2, Question 3, which details one or more individual devices, can be transmitted in the repeating FAC and PSH segments. Figure 7-19 summarizes the mapping between questions on these two FDA forms and the SUR message.

Figure 7-9. Mapping of FDA medical device reports to SUR message

Baseline Report	Annual Certification	SUR
		MSH
Part 1 Questions 2a-2g, 3a-3g	Part 1 Questions 2,3	{ FAC
Part 1 Questions 1, 7	Part 1 Question 1	{PSH
		PDC

Baseline Report	Annual Certification	SUR
		}
Part 2 Questions 16a, 16b	Part 2 Question 3	PSH
Part 2 Questions 1a, 1b	Part 2 Question 3	{ FAC
Part 2 Questions 2-15		PDC
		NTE
		}
Part 2 Alternative transmission method - image file rather than text		ED
		}

7.12 PRODUCT EXPERIENCE – SEGMENT DEFINITIONS

7.12.1 PES - product experience sender segment

HL7 Attribute Table - PES – Product Experience Sender

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/ #	TBL #	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	250	XON	O	Y		01059	Sender Organization Name
2	250	XCN	O	Y		01060	Sender Individual Name
3	250	XAD	O	Y		01062	Sender Address
4	250	XTN	O	Y		01063	Sender Telephone
5	75	EI	O			01064	Sender Event Identifier
6	2	NM	O			01065	Sender Sequence Number
7	600	FT	O	Y		01066	Sender Event Description
8	600	FT	O			01067	Sender Comment
9	26	TS	O			01068	Sender Aware Date/Time
10	26	TS	R			01069	Event Report Date
11	3	ID	O	Y/2	0234	01070	Event Report Timing/Type
12	1	ID	O		0235	01071	Event Report Source
13	1	ID	O	Y	0236	01072	Event Reported To

7.12.1.0 PES - field definitions

7.12.1.1 PES-1 Sender organization name (XON) 01059

```
Components:  <organization name (ST)> ^ <organization name type code (IS)> ^<ID Number (NM)> ^ <check
             digit (NM)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)> ^ <assigning
             authority  (HD)> ^ <identifier type code (IS)> ^ <assigning facility ID (HD)> ^ <name
             representation code (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority: <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> * <universal ID type
             (ID)>
```

```
Subcomponents of assigning facility: <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> * <universal ID type
            (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the name of the organization sending the message. Coded lists of manufacturers such as that from the World Health Organization database might be used in the component of the coded name to identify the source code type. If sent from an individual, this field may not be sent.

7.12.1.2 PES-2 Sender individual name (XCN) 01060

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, use instead of the CN data type.  <ID number (ST)> ^ <family
            name (FN)> ^ <given name (ST)> ^ <second or further given names or initials thereof
            (ST)> ^ <suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <degree (e.g., MD)
            (IS)> ^ <source table (IS)> ^ <assigning authority (HD)> ^ <name type code (ID)>  ^
            <identifier check digit (ST)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)>
            ^ <identifier type code (IS)> ^ <assigning facility (HD)> ^ <name representation code
            (ID)> ^ <name context (CE)> ^ <name validity range (DR)> ^ < name assembly order (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type
            (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning facility ID:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID
            type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the name of the contact individual. If sent by an organization, the individuals in the organization who serve as primary contact points correspondence regarding this event.

7.12.1.3 PES-3 Sender address (XAD) 01062

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, replaces the AD data type.  <street address (SAD)> ^ <other
            designation (ST)> ^ <city (ST)> ^ <state or province (ST)> ^ <zip or postal code (ST)> ^
            <country (ID)> ^ < address type (ID)> ^ <other geographic designation (ST)> ^
            <county/parish code (IS)> ^ <census tract (IS)> ^ <address representation code (ID)> ^
            <address validity range (DR)>
```

Definition: This field contains the postal address of the message sender to which correspondence regarding the experience being reported should be directed.

7.12.1.4 PES-4 Sender telephone (XTN) 01063

```
Components:  [NNN] [(999)]999-9999 [X99999] [B99999] [C any text] ^ <telecommunication use code (ID)>
            ^ <telecommunication equipment type (ID)> ^ <email address (ST)> ^ <country code (NM)> ^
            <area/city code (NM)> ^ phone number (NM)> ^ <extension (NM)> ^ <any text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the telephone number of the message sender to which telephone communications regarding the experience being reported should be directed. An electronic mail address can be specified in this field.

7.12.1.5 PES-5 Sender event identifier (EI) 01064

```
Components:  <entity identifier (ST)> ^ <namespace ID (IS)> ^ <universal ID (ST)> ^ <universal ID
            type (ID)>
```

Definition: The first component of this field contains the product manufacturer's unique alphanumeric identifier for this specific event. This identifier will be used on all subsequent communications regarding this event. For events reported to the FDA, the identifier is: the FDA assigned manufacturer or distributor number; a hyphen; the 4-digit year; a hyphen; and a consecutive 5-digit sequence number for each report filled by the sender that year. For example, the event identifier for the third event reported in 1996 by a manufacturer whose FDA-assigned registration number is 1234567 would be 1234567-1993-3.

Organizations without a FDA-assigned registration number should use 0000000 until assigned a number. Reports from other facilities should use the 10-digit HCFA number left padded with zeros in place of the FDA-assigned registration number. The second through fourth components are defined in exactly the same way as the three components of the hierarchic designator (HD) data type (Section 2.8.18, "HD - hierarchic designator").

7.12.1.6 PES-6 Sender sequence number (NM) 01065

Definition: This field contains sequentially assigned integer values which distinguish messages which share the same sender event identification element. 0 for initial report, 1 for second, and so on.

7.12.1.7 PES-7 Sender event description (FT) 01066

Definition: This field contains the summary narrative text description of the event that occurred written by the sender, which may include a description of the nature of the event, how the product was involved, any environmental conditions that may have influenced the event, and patient follow-up or required treatment. Note that laboratory results can be encoded as OBX segments rather then including them in the narrative. By representing clinical information in OBX segments rather than in the narrative, these data become much more useful and flexible.

7.12.1.8 PES-8 Sender comment (FT) 01067

Definition: This field contains the text commentary regarding the report being made, such as disclaimers, which is not necessarily part of the report.

7.12.1.9 PES-9 Sender aware date/time (TS) 01068

Definition: This field identifies the date the sender became aware of the event.

7.12.1.10 PES-10 Event report date (TS) 01069

Definition: This field contains the date the message was originally sent to the regulatory agency.

7.12.1.11 PES-11 Event report timing /type (ID) 01070

Definition: This field contains the timing type of report as required by regulatory agency. Refer to *HL7 Table 0234 - Report timing* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0234 - Report timing

Value	Description
CO	Correction
AD	Additional information
RQ	Requested information
DE	Device evaluation
PD	Periodic
3D	3 day report

Value	Description
7D	7 day report
10D	10 day report
15D	15 day report
30D	30 day report

7.12.1.12 PES-12 Event report source (ID) 01071

Definition: This field identifies the source from which the sender learned about the event. Multiple sources may be reported by repeating the element.

If the source of the report is a clinical trial, the CSR and CSP segments can be included to define the study. Refer to *HL7 Table 0235 - Report source* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0235 - Report source

Value	Description
C	Clinical trial
L	Literature
H	Health professional
R	Regulatory agency
D	Database/registry/poison control center
N	Non-healthcare professional
P	Patient
M	Manufacturer/marketing authority holder
E	Distributor
O	Other

7.12.1.13 PES-13 Event reported to (ID) 01072

Definition: This field indicates all the entities to whom the entity submitting the report has reported the event. Repeat the element if the report was submitted to more than one entity. Refer to *HL7 Table 0236 - Event reported to* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0236 - Event reported to

Value	Description
M	Manufacturer
L	Local facility/user facility
R	Regulatory agency
D	Distributor

7.12.2 PEO - product experience observation segment

Details related to a particular clinical experience or event are embodied in the PEO segment. This segment can be used to characterize an event which might be attributed to a product to which the patient was exposed. Products with a possible causal relationship to the observed experience are described in the following PCR (possible causal relationship) segments. The message format was designed to be robust and includes many optional elements which may not be required for a particular regulatory purpose but allow a complete representation of the drug experience if needed.

A PEX message can contain multiple PEO segments if the patient experienced more than one event but must contain at least one PEO segment.

HL7 Attribute Table – PEO – Product Experience Observation

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/ #	TBL #	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	250	CE	O	Y		01073	Event Identifiers Used
2	250	CE	O	Y		01074	Event Symptom/Diagnosis Code
3	26	TS	R			01075	Event Onset Date/Time
4	26	TS	O			01076	Event Exacerbation Date/Time
5	26	TS	O			01077	Event Improved Date/Time
6	26	TS	O			01078	Event Ended Data/Time
7	250	XAD	O	Y		01079	Event Location Occurred Address
8	1	ID	O	Y	0237	01080	Event Qualification
9	1	ID	O		0238	01081	Event Serious
10	1	ID	O		0239	01082	Event Expected
11	1	ID	O	Y	0240	01083	Event Outcome
12	1	ID	O		0241	01084	Patient Outcome
13	600	FT	O	Y		01085	Event Description From Others
14	600	FT	O	Y		01086	Event From Original Reporter
15	600	FT	O	Y		01087	Event Description From Patient
16	600	FT	O	Y		01088	Event Description From Practitioner
17	600	FT	O	Y		01089	Event Description From Autopsy
18	250	CE	O	Y		01090	Cause Of Death
19	250	XPN	O	Y		01091	Primary Observer Name
20	250	XAD	O	Y		01092	Primary Observer Address
21	250	XTN	O	Y		01093	Primary Observer Telephone
22	1	ID	O		0242	01094	Primary Observer's Qualification
23	1	ID	O		0242	01095	Confirmation Provided By
24	26	TS	O			01096	Primary Observer Aware Date/Time
25	1	ID	O		0243	01097	Primary Observer's identity May Be Divulged

7.12.2.0 PEO field definitions

7.12.2.1 PEO-1 Event identifiers used (CE) 01073

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
(ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field may be used to transmit the event identifier used by other entities for this event. The entry would typically contain a unique alphanumeric identifier assigned by an entity with the text component null or repeating the unique alphanumeric identifier followed by the organization's identifier. An event identifier might be GB1234^GB1234^PharmaGiant for example.

7.12.2.2 PEO-2 Event symptom/diagnosis code (CE) 01074

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field is the coded diagnosis or problem description which best describes the event. A text representation of the coded item should routinely be included. MEDDRA and WHO-ART are examples of appropriate coding schemes, as are the patient and device codes included in the FDA Center for Devices and Radiologic Health's coding manual for Form 3500A.

7.12.2.3 PEO-3 Event onset date/time (TS) 01075

Definition: This field contains a report or best estimate of the date/time of onset of the event. The date/time can be recorded to any level of precision it is known (hour, day, month, year).

7.12.2.4 PEO-4 Event exacerbation date/time (TS) 01076

Definition: This field identifies the best estimate of the date/time the event was exacerbated.

7.12.2.5 PEO-5 Event improved date/time (TS) 01077

Definition: This field identifies the best estimate of the date/time the event improved.

7.12.2.6 PEO-6 Event ended data/time (TS) 01078

Definition: This field identifies the best estimate of the date/time the event resolved.

7.12.2.7 PEO-7 Event location occurred address (XAD) 01079

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, replaces the AD data type.  <street address (SAD)> ^ <other
            designation (ST)> ^ <city (ST)> ^ <state or province (ST)> ^ <zip or postal code (ST)> ^
            <country (ID)> ^ < address type (ID)> ^ <other geographic designation (ST)> ^
            <county/parish code (IS)> ^ <census tract (IS)> ^ <address representation code (ID)> ^
            <address validity range (DR)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the location at which the event started. Often this will specify only the country in which the event started.

7.12.2.8 PEO-8 Event qualification (ID) 01080

Definition: This field is contains a classification of the type of product experience this event is considered to represent. Refer to *HL7 Table 0237 - Event qualification* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0237 - Event qualification

Value	Description
I	Interaction
O	Overdose
A	Abuse
M	Misuse

Value	Description
D	Dependency
L	Lack of expect therapeutic effect
W	Drug withdrawal
B	Unexpected beneficial effect

Unexpected beneficial effects would not often be reported but are required by certain countries.

7.12.2.9 PEO-9 Event serious (ID) 01081

Definition: This field indicates whether the event was judged as serious. If the event did not meet the criteria for seriousness but the sender judges the event significant on other grounds, the event can be identified as significant [*but not serious*]. Refer to *HL7 Table 0238 - Event seriousness* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0238 - Event seriousness

Value	Description
Y	Yes
S	Significant
N	No

7.12.2.10 PEO-10 Event expected (ID) 01082

Definition: This field indicates whether the observed event was expected or unexpected as judged. Refer to *HL7 Table 0239 - Event expected* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0239 - Event expected

Value	Description
Y	Yes
N	No
U	Unknown

7.12.2.11 PEO-11 Event outcome (ID) 01083

Definition: This field identifies the consequence of the event on the patient. If the consequence of the event is not understood or not available, the patient outcome element may be used although neither is required. May be repeated if more than one is appropriate. Refer to *HL7 Table 0240 - Event consequence* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0240 - Event consequence

Value	Description
D	Death
L	Life threatening
H	Caused hospitalized

Value	Description
P	Prolonged hospitalization
C	Congenital anomaly/birth defect
I	Incapacity which is significant, persistent or permanent
J	Disability which is significant, persistent or permanent
R	Required intervention to prevent permanent impairment/damage
O	Other

7.12.2.12 PEO-12 Patient outcome (ID) 01084

When an event specific outcome is not available, the patient outcome element may be used to represent the patient's overall outcome if that information is known. Refer to *HL7 Table 0241 - Patient outcome* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0241 - Patient outcome

Value	Description
D	Died
R	Recovering
N	Not recovering/unchanged
W	Worsening
S	Sequelae
F	Fully recovered
U	Unknown

7.12.2.13 PEO-13 Event description from others (FT) 01085

Definition: This field contains a summary narrative text description of the event that occurred written by the sender. Note that laboratory results can be encoded as OBX segments rather then including them in the narrative. By representing clinical information in OBX segments rather than in the narrative, these data become much more useful and flexible.

7.12.2.14 PEO-14 Event description from original reporter (FT) 01086

Definition: This field contains a summary narrative text description of the event provided by the original reporter. Note that laboratory results can be encoded as OBX segments rather then including them in the narrative.

7.12.2.15 PEO-15 Event description from patient (FT) 01087

Definition: This field contains a summary narrative text description of the event obtained directly from the patient. Note that laboratory results can be encoded as OBX segments rather then including them in the narrative, which will allow the data to be more readily represented and manipulated.

7.12.2.16 PEO-16 Event description from practitioner (FT) 01088

Definition: This field contains a summary narrative text description of the event provided by the practitioner most familiar with the event. Note that laboratory results can be encoded as OBX segments rather then including them in the narrative.

7.12.2.17 PEO-17 Event description from autopsy (FT) 01089

Definition: This field contains a summary narrative text description of the autopsy results. Note that laboratory results can be encoded as OBX segments rather then including them in the narrative.

7.12.2.18 PEO-18 Cause of death (CE) 01090

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the coded cause of death. May be repeated as necessary to list multiple contributing causes. A text description can be included by including text but no code or coding system. For example, if the cause of death is to be determined at autopsy but results are not yet available, the cause of death element could be ^Pending autopsy^. The date/time of death can be sent in the PID and the autopsy results sent in the event description from autopsy element of the PEO segment.

7.12.2.19 PEO-19 Primary observer name (XPN) 01091

```
Components: In Version 2.3, replaces the PN data type.  <family name (FN)> ^ <given name (ST)> ^
            <second and further given names or initials thereof (ST)> ^ <suffix (e.g., JR or III)
            (ST)> ^ <prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <degree (e.g., MD) (IS)> ^ <name type code (ID) > ^
            <name representation code (ID)> ^ <name context (CE)> ^ <name validity range (DR)> ^
            <name assembly order (ID)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the name of the person who initially described the event.

7.12.2.20 PEO-20 Primary observer address (XAD) 01092

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, replaces the AD data type.  <street address (SAD)> ^ <other
            designation (ST)> ^ <city (ST)> ^ <state or province (ST)> ^ <zip or postal code (ST)> ^
            <country (ID)> ^ < address type (ID)> ^ <other geographic designation (ST)> ^
            <county/parish code (IS)> ^ <census tract (IS)> ^ <address representation code (ID)> ^
            <address validity range (DR)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the address of the person who initially described the event.

7.12.2.21 PEO-21 Primary observer telephone (XTN) 01093

```
Components:  [NNN] [(999)]999-9999 [X99999] [B99999] [C any text] ^ <telecommunication use code (ID)>
             ^ <telecommunication equipment type (ID)> ^ <email address (ST)> ^ <country code (NM)> ^
             <area/city code (NM)> ^ phone number (NM)> ^ <extension (NM)> ^ <any text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the telephone number of the person who initially described the event.

7.12.2.22 PEO-22 Primary observer's qualification (ID) 01094

Definition: This field contains the qualification of the primary observer which may assist in assessing the validity of the observations. Refer to *HL7 Table 0242 - Primary observer's qualification* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0242 - Primary observer's qualification

Value	Description
P	Physician (osteopath, homeopath)
R	Pharmacist
M	Mid-level professional (nurse, nurse practitioner, physician's assistant)
H	Other health professional
C	Health care consumer/patient
L	Lawyer/attorney
O	Other non-health professional

7.12.2.23 PEO-23 Confirmation provided by (ID) 01095

Definition: This field contains the qualification of the health professional who confirmed the observation if the primary observer was not a health professional. Refer to *HL7 Table 0242 - Primary observer's qualification* for valid values.

7.12.2.24 PEO-24 Primary observer aware date/time (TS) 01096

Definition: This field identifies the date/time the primary observer became aware of event.

7.12.2.25 PEO-25 Primary observer's identity may be divulged (ID) 01097

Definition: Indicates whether or not the primary observer, if known to the sender, grants permission to disclose his or her identity to the product manufacturer for the purpose of further investigating the event. If the element is absent, the assumption should be made that permission is not granted. Refer to *HL7 Table 0243 - Identity may be divulged* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0243 - Identity may be divulged

Value	Description
Y	Yes
N	No
NA	Not applicable

7.12.3 PCR - possible causal relationship segment

The PCR segment is used to communicate a potential or suspected relationship between a product (drug or device) or test and an event with detrimental effect on a patient. This segment identifies a potential causal relationship between the product identified in this segment and the event identified in the PEO segment.

More than one PCR segment can be included in the message if more than one product is possibly causally related to the event.

HL7 Attribute Table – PCR – Possible Causal Relationship

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/ #	TBL #	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	250	CE	R			01098	Implicated Product
2	1	IS	O		0249	01099	Generic Product
3	250	CE	O			01100	Product Class
4	8	CQ	O			01101	Total Duration Of Therapy
5	26	TS	O			01102	Product Manufacture Date
6	26	TS	O			01103	Product Expiration Date
7	26	TS	O			01104	Product Implantation Date
8	26	TS	O			01105	Product Explantation Date
9	8	IS	O		0244	01106	Single Use Device
10	250	CE	O			01107	Indication For Product Use
11	8	IS	O		0245	01108	Product Problem
12	30	ST	O	Y/3		01109	Product Serial/Lot Number
13	1	IS	O		0246	01110	Product Available For Inspection
14	250	CE	O			01111	Product Evaluation Performed
15	250	CE	O		0247	01112	Product Evaluation Status
16	250	CE	O			01113	Product Evaluation Results
17	8	ID	O		0248	01114	Evaluated Product Source
18	26	TS	O			01115	Date Product Returned To Manufacturer
19	1	ID	O		0242	01116	Device Operator Qualifications
20	1	ID	O		0250	01117	Relatedness Assessment
21	2	ID	O	Y/6	0251	01118	Action Taken In Response To The Event
22	2	ID	O	Y/6	0252	01119	Event Causality Observations
23	1	ID	O	Y/3	0253	01120	Indirect Exposure Mechanism

7.12.3.0 PCR field definitions

7.12.3.1 PCR-1 Implicated product (CE) 01098

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains the coded identity of the product (drug, device, etc.) which is possibly causally related to the event. Includes the product identity number such as NDC, model or catalogue numbers. If a coded value is not available for the product a text description can be included as the second component of the CE data. See Chapter 2 for a listing of some recognized coding systems for drugs and devices.

7.12.3.2 PRC-2 Generic product (IS) 01099

Definition: This field indicates whether the product used was a generic or a branded product. Refer to *User-defined Table 0249 – Generic product* for suggested values.

User-defined Table 0249 – Generic product

Value	Description
	No suggested values defined

7.12.3.3 PCR-3 Product class (CE) 01100

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains the coded classification of the implicated product. For drugs, this would usually be the drug class - calcium channel blocking agents for nifedipine for example. For other products it would be the generic type of device, e.g., urinary catheter, cardiac pacemaker. If a coded value is not available for the class, a text description can be included.

7.12.3.4 PCR-4 Total duration of therapy (CQ) 01101

```
Components:  <quantity (NM)> ^ <units (CE)>

Subcomponents of units: <identifier (ST)> & <test (ST)> & <name of coding system (IS)> & <alternate
            identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> & <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field represents the total duration of therapy with product listed. The treatment at the current dose and schedule are indicted in the quantity timing attribute of the RXE segment but the patient may have been treated for some time previously at a different dose or on a different schedule. The quantity in the second component of the CQ should be a time quantity.

7.12.3.5 PCR-5 Product manufacture date (TS) 01102

Definition: This field indicates the date the product was manufactured.

7.12.3.6 PCR-6 Product expiration date (TS) 01103

Definition: This field contains the expiration date indicated on the product packaging.

7.12.3.7 PCR-7 Product implantation date (TS) 01104

Definition: If an implantable medical device, this field identifies the date device was implanted.

7.12.3.8 PCR-8 Product explantation date (TS) 01105

Definition: If an implantable medical device and it was removed, the field identifies the date it was removed.

7.12.3.9 PCR-9 Single use device (IS) 01106

Definition: This field indicates whether the product was designed for a single use. Refer to *User-defined Table 0244 – Single use device* for suggested values.

User-defined Table 0244 – Single use device

Value	Description
	No suggested values defined

7.12.3.10 PCR-10 Indication for product use (CE) 01107

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains coded representation of the problem or diagnosis for which the product was used. See Chapter 2 for some coding systems which might be chosen to transmit diagnoses or problems.

7.12.3.11 PCR-11 Product problem (IS) 01108

Definition: A product problem would exist if a product malfunction could lead to death or serious injury. Refer to *User-defined Table 0245 - Product problem* for suggested values.

User-defined Table 0245 – Product problem

Value	Description
	No suggested values defined

7.12.3.12 PCR-12 Product serial/lot number (ST) 01109

Definition: This field is an alphanumeric descriptor which identifies the specific item or lot of drug. This descriptor would normally be obtained from the package labeling or item itself.

7.12.3.13 PCR-16 Product available for inspection (IS) 01110

Definition: This field indicates that the product is available for analysis. *User-defined Table 0246 - Product available for inspection is used as the HL7 identifier for the user-defined table of values for this field.* If the product was returned to the manufacturer, this would be indicated by including the date it was returned in the date product returned to manufacturer element.

User-defined Table 0246 – Product available for inspection

Value	Description
	No suggested values defined

7.12.3.14 PCR-14 Product evaluation performed (CE) 01111

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field indicates the type of product evaluation performed. The evaluation codes listed in SubPart B of the Coding Manual for FDA Form 3500A, “Type of Evaluation Performed” may be used. If no codes are available, text may be sent in the second component of the field.

7.12.3.15 PCR-15 Product evaluation status (CE) 01112

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field identifies the status of product evaluation. Subpart A Item H.3 of the Coding Manual for FDA Form 3500A may also be used. If no codes are available, text may be sent in the second component of the field. Refer to *HL7 Table 0247 - Status of evaluation* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0247 - Status of evaluation

Value	Description
Y	Evaluation completed
P	Evaluation in progress
K	Problem already known, no evaluation necessary
X	Product not made by company
A	Evaluation anticipated, but not yet begun
D	Product discarded -- unable to follow up
C	Product received in condition which made analysis impossible
I	Product remains implanted -- unable to follow up
U	Product unavailable for follow up investigation
Q	Product under quarantine -- unable to follow up
R	Product under recall/corrective action
O	Other

7.12.3.16 PCR-16 Product evaluation results (CE) 01113

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains the results of the product evaluation.

7.12.3.17 PCR-17 Evaluated product source (ID) 01114

Definition: This field contains the source of the product evaluated. Refer to *HL7 Table 0248 - Product source* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0248 - Product source

Value	Description
A	Actual product involved in incident was evaluated
L	A product from the same lot as the actual product involved was evaluated
R	A product from a reserve sample was evaluated
N	A product from a controlled/non-related inventory was evaluated

7.12.3.18 PCR-18 Date product returned to manufacturer (TS) 01115

Definition: If the product was returned to the manufacturer, this field contains the date it was returned may be reported.

7.12.3.19 PCR-19 Device operator qualifications (ID) 01116

Definition: This field identifies the qualification of the person operating the device when the event occurred. Refer to *HL7 Table 0242 - Primary observer's qualification* for valid values.

7.12.3.20 PCR-20 Relatedness assessment (ID) 01117

Definition: This field represents the assessment of relatedness of the product to the event. Refer to *HL7 Table 0250 - Relatedness assessment* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0250 - Relatedness assessment

Value	Description
H	Highly probable
M	Moderately probable
S	Somewhat probable
I	Improbable
N	Not related

7.12.3.21 PCR-21 Action taken in response to the event (ID) 01118

Definition: This field indicates the action taken as a result of the event. Segment may repeat if multiple categories of evidence are relevant. Refer to *HL7 Table 0251 - Action taken in response to the event* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0251 - Action taken in response to the event

Value	Description
WP	Product withdrawn permanently
WT	Product withdrawn temporarily
DR	Product dose or frequency of use reduced
DI	Product dose or frequency of use increased
OT	Other
N	None

7.12.3.22 PCR-22 Event causality observations (ID) 01119

Definition: This field contains observations made about the event which may bear on causality. Refer to *HL7 Table 0252 - Causality observations* for valid values. Segment may repeat if multiple categories of evidence are relevant.

HL7 Table 0252 - Causality observations

Value	Description
AW	Abatement of event after product withdrawn
BE	Event recurred after product reintroduced

Value	Description
LI	Literature reports association of product with event
IN	Event occurred after product introduced
EX	Alternative explanations for the event available
PL	Effect observed when patient receives placebo
TC	Toxic levels of product documented in blood or body fluids
DR	Dose response observed
SE	Similar events in past for this patient
OE	Occurrence of event was confirmed by objective evidence
OT	Other

7.12.3.23 PCR-23 Indirect exposure mechanism (ID) 01120

Definition: The patient identified in the PID segment, who experienced the event, might have been exposed to the potential causal product via an intermediary, e.g., a child might be exposed to a product through the placenta or in breast milk, or a transfusion recipient might be exposed via a blood product. If this is the case, the mechanism of product transmission is identified in this field, using the valid values in *HL7 Table 0253 - Indirect exposure mechanism*. If this field is populated, the identity of the person through whom the product was transmitted is contained in NK1 and RXE segments which follow.

HL7 Table 0253 - Indirect exposure mechanism

Value	Description
B	Breast milk
P	Transplacental
F	Father
X	Blood product
O	Other

7.12.4 PSH - product summary header segment

HL7 Attribute Table – PSH –Product Summary Header

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/ #	TBL #	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	60	ST	R			01233	Report Type
2	60	ST	O			01297	Report Form Identifier
3	26	TS	R			01235	Report Date
4	26	TS	O			01236	Report Interval Start Date
5	26	TS	O			01237	Report Interval End Date
6	12	CQ	O			01238	Quantity Manufactured
7	12	CQ	O			01239	Quantity Distributed
8	1	ID	O		0329	01240	Quantity Distributed Method
9	600	FT	O			01241	Quantity Distributed Comment
10	12	CQ	O			01242	Quantity in Use
11	1	ID	O		0329	01243	Quantity in Use Method
12	600	FT	O			01244	Quantity in Use Comment

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/ #	TBL #	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
13	2	NM	O	Y/8		01245	Number of Product Experience Reports Filed by Facility
14	2	NM	O	Y/8		01246	Number of Product Experience Reports Filed by Distributor

7.12.4.0 PSH field definitions

7.12.4.1 PSH-1 Report type (ST) 01233

Definition: This field contains the name, title, or other description of the report. Typically, the field will include the agency name (e.g., FDA), agency component if applicable (e.g., CDRH) and the report type (e.g., Medical Device Reporting Baseline Report).

7.12.4.2 PSH-2 Report form identifier (ST) 01297

Definition: This field contains the form descriptor which describes the report. Typically, the field will include the agency name (e.g., FDA), agency component if applicable (e.g., CDRH) and the form number (e.g., 3417).

7.12.4.3 PSH-3 Report date (TS) 01235

Definition: This field contains the date as assigned by the sender.

7.12.4.4 PSH-4 Report interval start date (TS) 01236

Definition: This field contains the date that marks the beginning of the time interval covered by the current report.

7.12.4.5 PSH-5 Report interval end date (TS) 01237

Definition: This field contains the date which marks the inclusive end of the time interval covered by the current report.

7.12.4.6 PSH-6 Quantity manufactured (CQ) 01238

```
Components:  <quantity (NM)> ^ <units (CE)>

Subcomponents of units: <identifier (ST)> & <test (ST)> & <name of coding system (IS)> & <alternate
             identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> & <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field is used to send the number of units of the product manufactured during the reporting interval. The second component can be used to specify the units for the quantity.

7.12.4.7 PSH-7 Quantity distributed (CQ) 01239

```
Components:  <quantity (NM)> ^ <units (CE)>

Subcomponents of units: <identifier (ST)> & <test (ST)> & <name of coding system (IS)> & <alternate
             identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> & <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field is used to send the number of units of the product which was distributed during the reporting interval. The second component can be used to specify the units for the quantity.

7.12.4.8 PSH-8 Quantity distributed method (ID) 01240

Definition: This field is used for measuring the quantity distributed. An explanation of the method used for estimation can be included in *PSH-9-quantity distributed comment*. Refer to *HL7 Table 0329 - Quantity method* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0329 - Quantity method

Value	Description
A	Actual count
E	Estimated (see comment)

7.12.4.9 PSH-9 Quantity distributed comment (FT) 01241

Definition: This field is used for any explanatory text needed but in particular should provide a description of the estimation method used. If referring to the description used in a previous report, the comment should include the product identifier and data of that report.

7.12.4.10 PSH-10 Quantity in use (CQ) 01242

```
Components:  <quantity (NM)> ^ <units (CE)>

Subcomponents of units: <identifier (ST)> & <test (ST)> & <name of coding system (IS)> & <alternate
             identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> & <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field is used to send the number of units of the product which were in use during the reporting interval. The second component can be used to specify the units for the quantity.

7.12.4.11 PSH-11 Quantity in use method (ID) 01243

Definition: This field contains the method used for measuring the quantity in use. An explanation of the method used for estimation can be included in *PSH-12-quantity in use comment*. Refer to *HL7 Table 0329 - Quantity method* for valid values.

7.12.4.12 PSH-12 Quantity in use comment (FT) 01244

Definition: This field can be used for any explanatory text needed but in particular should provide a description of the estimation method used. If referring to the description used in a previous report, the comment should include the product identifier and data of the report.

7.12.4.13 PSH-13 Number of product experience reports filed by facility (NM) 01245

Definition: The field contains the number of product experience reports filed by facility.

7.12.4.14 PSH-14 Number of product experience reports filed by distributor (NM) 01246

Definition: This field contains the number of product experience reports filed by distributor.

7.12.5 PDC - product detail country segment

HL7 Attribute Table – PDC – Product Detail Country

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/ #	TBL #	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	250	XON	R	Y		01247	Manufacturer/Distributor
2	250	CE	R			01248	Country
3	60	ST	R			01249	Brand Name
4	60	ST	O			01250	Device Family Name
5	250	CE	O			01251	Generic Name
6	60	ST	O	Y		01252	Model Identifier
7	60	ST	O			01253	Catalogue Identifier
8	60	ST	O	Y		01254	Other Identifier
9	250	CE	O			01255	Product Code
10	4	ID	O		0330	01256	Marketing Basis
11	60	ST	O			01257	Marketing Approval ID
12	12	CQ	O			01258	Labeled Shelf Life
13	12	CQ	O			01259	Expected Shelf Life
14	26	TS	O			01260	Date First Marketed
15	26	TS	O			01261	Date Last Marketed

7.12.5.0 PDC field definitions

7.12.5.1 PDC-1 Manufacturer/distributor (XON) 01247

```
Components:  <organization name (ST)> ^ <organization name type code (IS)> ^<ID Number (NM)> ^ <check
             digit (NM)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)> ^ <assigning
             authority  (HD)> ^ <identifier type code (IS)> ^ <assigning facility ID (HD)> ^ <name
             representation code (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority: <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> * <universal ID type
             (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning facility: <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> * <universal ID type
             (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the identity of the manufacturer/distributor.

7.12.5.2 PDC-2 Country (CE) 01248

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
             (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains the country to which this product detail is relevant. ISO 3166 provides a list of country codes that may be used.

7.12.5.3 PDC-3 Brand name (ST) 01249

Definition: This field contains the name under which the product is marketed by this manufacturer.

7.12.5.4 PDC-4 Device family name (ST) 01250

Definition: This field contains the name used by the manufacturer to describe the family of products to which this product belongs.

7.12.5.5 PDC-5 Generic name (CE) 01251

```
Components<identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains the name generically used to identify the product.

7.12.5.6 PDC-6 Model identifier (ST) 01252

Definition: This field contains the manufacturer's model identifier for the product.

7.12.5.7 PDC-7 Catalogue identifier (ST) 01253

Definition: This field contains the manufacturer's catalogue identifier for the product.

7.12.5.8 PDC-8 Other identifier (ST) 01254

Definition: This field contains any other identifier used to for the product.

7.12.5.9 PDC-9 Product code (CE) 01255

```
Components: <identifier (ST)> ^ <text (ST)> ^ <name of coding system (IS)> ^ <alternate identifier
            (ST)> ^ <alternate text (ST)> ^ <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains the product code from an external coding system such as that used by the CDRH at the FDA.

7.12.5.10 PDC-10 Marketing basis (ID) 01256

Definition: This field contains the basis for marketing approval. Refer to *HL7 Table 0330 - Marketing basis* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0330 - Marketing basis

Value	Description
510K	510 (K)
510E	510 (K) exempt
PMA	Premarketing authorization
PRE	Preamendment
TXN	Transitional
522S	Post marketing study (522)

7.12.5.11 PDC-11 Marketing approval ID (ST) 01257

Definition: This field contains the designation or description of the marketing basis.

7.12.5.12 PDC-12 Labeled shelf life (CQ) 01258

```
Components:  <quantity (NM)> ^ <units (CE)>

Subcomponents of units: <identifier (ST)> & <text (ST)> & <name of coding system (IS)> & <alternate
             identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> & <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains the shelf life of the product as labeled. This will usually be in months or years. If there is no shelf life indicated in the product labeling, this field will be empty.

7.12.5.13 PDC-13 Expected shelf life (CQ) 01259

```
Components:  <quantity (NM)> ^ <units (CE)>

Subcomponents of units: <identifier (ST)> & <text (ST)> & <name of coding system (IS)> & <alternate
             identifier (ST)> & <alternate text (ST)> & <name of alternate coding system (IS)>
```

Definition: This field contains the shelf life of the product expected by the manufacturer. This will usually be in months or years.

7.12.5.14 PDC-14 Date first marketed (TS) 01260

Definition: This field contains the date the product was first marketed in the country.

7.12.5.15 PDC-15 Date last marketed (TS) 01261

Definition: This field contains the date the product was last marketed in the country. This field will be omitted if the product is still being marketed.

7.12.6 FAC - facility segment

HL7 Attribute Table – FAC – Facility

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/ #	TBL #	ITEM #	ELEMENT NAME
1	20	EI	R			01262	Facility ID-FAC
2	1	ID	O		0331	01263	Facility Type
3	250	XAD	R	Y		01264	Facility Address
4	250	XTN	R			01265	Facility Telecommunication
5	250	XCN	O	Y		01266	Contact Person
6	60	ST	O	Y		01267	Contact Title
7	250	XAD	O	Y		01166	Contact Address
8	250	XTN	O	Y		01269	Contact Telecommunication
9	250	XCN	R	Y		01270	Signature Authority
10	60	ST	O			01271	Signature Authority Title
11	250	XAD	O	Y		01272	Signature Authority Address
12	250	XTN	O			01273	Signature Authority Telecommunication

7.12.6.0 FAC field definitions

7.12.6.1 FAC-1 Facility ID-FAC (EI) 01262

```
Components:  <entity identifier (ST)> ^ <namespace ID (IS)> ^ <universal ID (ST)> ^ <universal ID
             type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the facility identifier.

7.12.6.2 FAC-2 Facility type (ID) 01263

Definition: This field contains the type of facility. Refer to *HL7 Table 0331 - Facility type* for valid values.

HL7 Table 0331 - Facility type

Value	Description
U	User
M	Manufacturer
D	Distributor
A	Agent for a foreign manufacturer

7.12.6.3 FAC-3 Facility address (XAD) 01264

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, replaces the AD data type.  <street address (SAD)> ^ <other
             designation (ST)> ^ <city (ST)> ^ <state or province (ST)> ^ <zip or postal code (ST)> ^
             <country (ID)> ^ < address type (ID)> ^ <other geographic designation (ST)> ^
             <county/parish code (IS)> ^ <census tract (IS)> ^ <address representation code (ID)> ^
             <address validity range (DR)>
```

Definition: This field contains the facility's address.

7.12.6.4 FAC-4 Facility telecommunication (XTN) 01265

```
Components:  [NNN] [(999)]999-9999 [X99999] [B99999] [C any text] ^ <telecommunication use code (ID)>
             ^ <telecommunication equipment type (ID)> ^ <email address (ST)> ^ <country code (NM)> ^
             <area/city code (NM)> ^ phone number (NM)> ^ <extension (NM)> ^ <any text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the facility's telecommunication information.

7.12.6.5 FAC-5 Contact person (XCN) 01266

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, use instead of the CN data type.  <ID number (ST)> ^ <family
             name (FN)> ^ <given name (ST)> ^ <second or further given names or initials thereof
             (ST)> ^ <suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <degree (e.g., MD)
             (IS)> ^ <source table (IS)> ^ <assigning authority (HD)> ^ <name type code (ID)>  ^
             <identifier check digit (ST)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)>
             ^ <identifier type code (IS)> ^ <assigning facility (HD)> ^ <name representation code
             (ID)> ^ <name context (CE)> ^ <name validity range (DR)> ^ <name assembly order (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type
             (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning facility ID:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID
             type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the primary contact person's name.

7.12.6.6 FAC-6 Contact title (ST) 01267

Definition: This field contains the primary contact person's title.

7.12.6.7 FAC-7 Contact address (XAD) 01166

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, replaces the AD data type.  <street address (SAD)> ^ <other
            designation (ST)> ^ <city (ST)> ^ <state or province (ST)> ^ <zip or postal code (ST)> ^
            <country (ID)> ^ < address type (ID)> ^ <other geographic designation (ST)> ^
            <county/parish code (IS)> ^ <census tract (IS)> ^ <address representation code (ID)> ^
            <address validity range (DR)>
```

Definition: This field contains the primary contact person's address.

7.12.6.8 FAC-8 Contact telecommunication (XTN) 01269

```
Components:  [NNN] [(999)]999-9999 [X99999] [B99999] [C any text] ^ <telecommunication use code (ID)>
             ^ <telecommunication equipment type (ID)> ^ <email address (ST)> ^ <country code (NM)> ^
             <area/city code (NM)> ^ phone number (NM)> ^ <extension (NM)> ^ <any text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the primary contact person's telecommunication information.

7.12.6.9 FAC-9 Signature authority (XCN) 01270

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, use instead of the CN data type.  <ID number (ST)> ^ <family
            name (FN)> ^ <given name (ST)> ^ <second or further given names or initials thereof
            (ST)> ^ <suffix (e.g., JR or III) (ST)> ^ <prefix (e.g., DR) (ST)> ^ <degree (e.g., MD)
            (IS)> ^ <source table (IS)> ^ <assigning authority (HD)> ^ <name type code (ID)>  ^
            <identifier check digit (ST)> ^ <code identifying the check digit scheme employed (ID)>
            ^ <identifier type code (IS)> ^ <assigning facility (HD)> ^ <name representation code
            (ID)> ^ <name context (CE)> ^ <name validity range (DR)> ^ < name assembly order (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning authority:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID type
            (ID)>

Subcomponents of assigning facility ID:  <namespace ID (IS)> & <universal ID (ST)> & <universal ID
            type (ID)>
```

Definition: This field contains the name of the individual with signature authority or who is responsible for the report.

7.12.6.10 FAC-10 Signature authority title (ST) 01271

Definition: This field contains the title of the individual with signature authority or who is responsible for this report.

7.12.6.11 FAC-11 Signature authority address (XAD) 01272

```
Components: In Version 2.3 and later, replaces the AD data type.  <street address (SAD)> ^ <other
            designation (ST)> ^ <city (ST)> ^ <state or province (ST)> ^ <zip or postal code (ST)> ^
            <country (ID)> ^ < address type (ID)> ^ <other geographic designation (ST)> ^
            <county/parish code (IS)> ^ <census tract (IS)> ^ <address representation code (ID)> ^
            <address validity range (DR)>
```

Definition: This field contains the address of the individual with signature authority or who is responsible for this report.

7.12.6.12 FAC-12 Signature authority telecommunication (XTN) 01273

```
Components:  [NNN] [(999)]999-9999 [X99999] [B99999] [C any text] ^ <telecommunication use code (ID)>
             ^ <telecommunication equipment type (ID)> ^ <email address (ST)> ^ <country code (NM)> ^
             <area/city code (NM)> ^ phone number (NM)> ^ <extension (NM)> ^ <any text (ST)>
```

Definition: This field contains the telecommunication information of the individual with signature authority of who is responsible for this report.

7.13 PRODUCT EXPERIENCE – EXAMPLES OF USE

MSH|^-&|SAP||RAP||200006051512||PEX^P07|...<cr>

EVN|...<cr>

PID|1||""|A^A^A||19230616|F|||||||||||||||Y|...<cr>

Note: This section probably needs to have its own definition of the PID. PID-3 is a required field in chapter 3, but in the context of this section probably shouldn't be required. I also removed PID-23, Birthplace (19950710). A date is not a birthplace.

PES|Eli Lilly and Company||Lilly Corporate Center^^Indianapolis^IN^46285||
GB95070448A|0|||19950704|19950710|10D|...<cr>

PEO||^Awaiting results of autopsy|19950704||||^^^^^GB||S|N|D~H~O||Patient admitted via casualty with increased shortness of breath and left sided chest pain on 04 JUL 95 for assessment.~11-JUL-95 Patient admitted 09-JUL-95 at 11:30 PM with an 18 hour history of diarrhoea followed by collapse. On admission, patient was exhausted and dehydrated. She had a rash on both breasts and abdomen. Patient found to have deteriorating renal function. Patient commenced IV fluid, however patient was found dead on 10-JUL-95 morning. Query vomited and aspirated. Post mortem requested. Events possibly related to study drug.|...<cr>

PCR|xxxxx^Wonder Drug 1^ATC|N|^antineoplastic|||||||^NON SMALL CELL LUNG CANCER|...<cr>

RXE|1^^^19950629^19950710|*xxxxx*^Wonder Drug 1^ATC|1||TAB|||||||||||||||M1|3||||NON SMALL CELL LUNG CANCER|...<cr>

RXR|PO|...<cr>

Note: The message structure for the PEX does not allow repeating RXE/RXR groups within a PCR group. This is probably a mistake in the message definition table for the PEX messages.

PRB|AD|19950704|705^DYSPNEA^MEDR|...<cr>

PRB|AD|19950710|20143^DEATH^MEDR|...<cr>

PRB|AD|19950704|18330^CHEST PAIN^MEDR|...<cr>

PRB|AD|19950709|21197^DIARRHEA^MEDR|...<cr>

PRB|AD|19950709|6432^SYNCOPE^MEDR|...<cr>

PRB|AD|19950709|4966^DEHYDRATION^MEDR|...<cr>

PRB|AD|19950709|20544^KIDNEY FUNCTION ABNORMAL^MEDR|...<cr>

OBX|1|NM|804-5^lEUKOCYTES^LN||2300|10*3/ml|||||F|19940704|...<cr>

OBX|2|NM|770-8^NEUTROPHILS/100 LEUKOCYTES^LN||1.9|%|||||F|19950704|...<cr>

OBX|3|NM|6299-2^UREA NITROGEN^LN||22.3|mg%|||||F|19950709|...<cr>

OBX|4|NM|2160-0^CREATININE^LN||247|mmole|||||F|19950709|...<cr>

NTE|||Additional details must be obtained from the affiliate in order to assess causality. A three day alert phone call was made to the FDA on 12-JUL-95|...<cr>

7.14 WAVEFORM

HL7 support for waveform data is intended to provide access to waveform data in a variety of situations. Needs include remote access to waveform data, research, and input to clinical decision making, as well as obtaining snippets of waveform data to complete waveform data sets. In some cases, predominantly in research oriented environments, a physician may want to manually interpret, scale the raw data, and/or apply alternative algorithms to the raw data values. In these environments, the review of waveform data includes the processing of the raw data. The HL7 waveform data capabilities allow for these applications, including data collection information such as skew between channels, in-band with the waveform.

Waveform observations, like other results, can be transmitted in solicited mode (in response to a query) or in unsolicited mode - see Section 7.15.1, "W01 - waveform result, unsolicited transmission of requested information," for discussion. In either mode of transmission the timing information, channel definition, annotations, and digital time series data in the waveform recording are treated as individual "observations" within a result "battery." For a given "battery," each of the result fragments is transmitted in a separate OBX segment, where the Observation ID suffix for the OBX is used to identify the result fragment. To reduce ambiguity, an explicit framework for defining the structure of waveform result messages is provided. The elements of that framework include the following:

- Waveform specific data types which enable transmission of channel definition and waveform data
- Waveform specific Observation ID suffixes (OBX-3-observation identifier) which uniquely identify the category of waveform result in a given OBX segment
- Fixed rules for combining OBX segments of each category in the waveform response messages
- Explicit definition of which OBX fields may be populated for each category of waveform result
- Unique trigger events which identify result messages which contain batteries of waveform result OBX segments

7.14.1 Waveform result data types

Three waveform specific data types have been defined to enable transmission of waveform results.

7.14.1.1 NA - numeric array

```
<value1> ^ <value2> ^ <value3> ^ <value4> ^ ...
```

Definition: This data type is used to represent a series (array) of numeric values, each one having a data type of NM. A field of this type may contain a one-dimensional array (vector or row) of numbers. Also, by allowing the field to repeat, a two-dimensional array (table) of numbers may be transmitted using this format, with each row of the table represented as one repetition of the field. Arrays which have one or more values not present may be transmitted using this data type. "Not present" values are represented as two adjacent component delimiters. If the absent values occur at the end of a row, the trailing component delimiters may be omitted. If an entire row of a table has no values, no component delimiters are necessary (in this case, there will be two adjacent repetition delimiters). The maximum number of values in one repetition of an NA format field is determined by the maximum field length.

Examples:

```
|125^34^-22^-234^569^442^-212^6|                vector of 8 numbers
```

```
|1.2^-3.5^5.2~2.0^3.1^-6.2~3.5^7.8^-1.3|          3 x 3 array of numbers
|^2^3^4~5^^^8~9^10~~17^18^19^20|                  5 x 4 array of numbers with
                                                  the values in positions
                                                  1,1), (2,2), (2,3), (3,3),
                                                  (3,4), (4,1), (4,2), (4,3),
                                                  and (4,4) not present
```

7.14.1.2 MA - multiplexed array

```
<sample 1 from channel 1>^<sample 1 from channel 2>^<sample 1 from channel 3> ...~

<sample 2 from channel 1>^<sample 2 from channel 2>^<sample 2 from channel 3> ...~

 ...
```

Definition: This data type is used to represent channel-multiplexed waveform data, (e.g., the digitized values from an analog-to-digital converter or other digital data source). Each value is of type NM, and represents a time sample from a channel. This segment may contain data from one or more channels. The waveform data is in channel-multiplexed format (that is, the values for all channels for the first time sample are transmitted, then the values for the next time sample, and so on until the requisite number of time samples have been transmitted). Time samples are separated by repeat delimiters (~), and channels within a sample are separated by component delimiters (^). The time between samples (the sampling interval) is the reciprocal of the digitization frequency as specified using the CD data type.

Examples:

```
|0^0^0~1^1^1~2^2^2~3^3^3~4^4^4~5^5^5|      3 channels (identical), 5 time-samples
|0~1~2~3~4~5~6~7~8~9~10|                    1 channel, 11 time-samples
```

7.14.1.3 CD - Channel definition

```
Components:  <channel identifier (CM)> ^ <waveform source (CM)> ^ <channel sensitivity/units (CM)> ^
             <channel calibration parameters (CM)> ^ <channel sampling frequency (NM)> ^
             <minimum/maximum data values (CM)>

Subcomponents of channel identifier:  <channel number (NM)> & <channel name (ST)>

Subcomponents of waveform source:  <Source name 1 (ST)> & <Source name 2 (ST)>

Subcomponents of channel sensitivity/units:  <channel sensitivity (NM)> & < unit of measure
             identifier (ST)> & < unit of Measure Description (ST)> & < unit of Measure Coding System
             (IS)> & <alternate unit of measure identifier (ST)> & <alternate unit of Measure
             Description (ST)> & <alternate unit of Measure Coding System (IS)>

Subcomponents of channel calibration parameters:  < channel calibration sensitivity correction factor
             (NM)> & < channel calibration baseline (NM)> & < channel calibration time skew (NM)>

Subcomponents of minimum/maximum data values:  < minimum data value  (NM)> & <maximum data value
             (NM)>
```

Definition: This data type is used for labeling of digital waveform data. It defines a recording channel which is associated with one of the values in each time sample of waveform data. Each channel has a number (which generally defines its position in a multichannel display) and an optional name or label (also used in displays). One or two named waveform sources may also be associated with a channel (providing for the use of differential amplifiers with two inputs). The other components of the channel definition data type are optional. The individual components are defined as follows:

7.14.1.3.1 Channel identifier (CM)

```
Subcomponents:  <channel number (NM)> & <channel name (ST)>
```

Definition: Two subcomponents separated by subcomponent delimiters (&) which identify the channel, consisting of a channel number (required, maximum 4 characters, data type NM)and a channel name (optional, maximum 17 characters, data type ST).

7.14.1.3.2 Channel number (NM)

The channel number identifies the recording channel associated with a specified value in a time sample of data. It generally defines its position in a multichannel display.

7.14.1.3.3 Channel name (ST)

Definition: The channel name is a text string used as a label in waveform data displays. If this name is not present, the channel label displayed is <source1>-<source2>, where <source1> and <source2> are the names of the two waveform sources connected to this channel, or, if only one waveform sources <source1> is specified, the channel label displayed when the channel name is not given is <source1>.

7.14.1.4 Waveform source (CM)

```
Subcomponents:  <Source name 1 (ST)> & <Source name 2 (ST)>
```

Definition: Identifies the source of the waveform connected to the channel. Two names (each maximum of 8 characters, data type ST) separated by a subcomponent delimiter (&) may be specified if it is necessary to individually identify the two inputs for a waveform. Only one name need be specified if the channel is connected to a single input. For example, in EKG recordings typically only one name is used (such as I or II); in electroencephalography, two names are typically used, one for each input of the differential amplifier (such as F3 and C3). *(NOTE: Although the SIG voted to make waveform source a coded entry, this is not syntactically possible. We do not have a sub-sub-component delimiter available to separate the sub-fields of the proposed coded entry. Therefore, waveform source remains a string data type.).*

7.14.1.4.1 Source name 1 (ST)

Definition: Identifies the first input for the waveform source.

7.14.1.4.2 Source name 2 (ST)

Definition: Identifies the second input for the waveform source.

7.14.1.5 Channel sensitivity and units (CM)

```
Subcomponents:  <channel sensitivity (NM)> & < unit of measure identifier (ST)> & < unit of Measure
             Description (ST)> & < unit of Measure Coding System (IS)> & <alternate unit of measure
             identifier (ST)> & <alternate unit of Measure Description (ST)> & <alternate unit of
             Measure Coding System (IS)>
```

Definition: This CM data type defines the channel sensitivity (gain) and the units in which it is measured. This component consists of up to seven subcomponents, separated from each other by subcomponent delimiters (&). The first subcomponent specifies the sensitivity, while the remaining six subcomponents are used to specify the units of the sensitivity, using a format similar to the components of the coded entry (CE) data type. The subcomponents of the channel sensitivity and units are as follows:

7.14.1.5.1 Channel sensitivity (NM)

Defines the nominal value (maximum 20 characters, data type NM) that corresponds to one unit in the waveform data, that is, the effective resolution of the least significant bit of the ADC, and the polarity of the channel. The sensitivity incorporates both the amplifier gain and the actual ADC resolution. It does not, however, relate to the vertical scaling of a waveform display (it is, for example, a measure of voltage, not voltage per unit distance). For channels recording potential differences between two electrodes using a differential amplifier, a positive sensitivity indicates that a number in the waveform data which is greater than the channel baseline represents a potential at the first electrode which is more positive than that at the second electrode. A negative sensitivity indicates that a number in the waveform data which is greater than the channel baseline corresponds to a potential at the first electrode which is more negative than that at the second electrode.

7.14.1.5.2 Unit of measure identifier (ST)

Definition: A units designation (for example, uv, mv, v, pal, or mm(hg). Codes from the ISO+ extension of the standard SI single case unit abbreviations are presented as Figure 7-6, 7-7, and 7-8 in Section NNNN, the ANSI+ U.S. customary unit abbreviations, a superset of the ANSI standard which appears in Figure 7-9.

7.14.1.5.3 Unit of measure description (ST)

Definition: The full text name of the unit of measure identifier (for example, microvolt, millivolt, volt, pascal or millimeters of mercury) from a designated system of units.

7.14.1.5.4 Unit of measure coding system (IS)

Definition: The designated system of units. Refer to *User-defined table 0396 – Coding System* for suggested values.

7.14.1.5.5 Alternate unit of measure identifier (ST)

Definition: An alternate units designation (for example, uv, mv, v, pal, or mm(hg) . Codes from the ISO+ extension of the standard SI single case unit abbreviations are presented as Figure 7-6, 7-7, and 7-8 in Section 7.4.2.6.2, the ANSI+ U.S. customary unit abbreviations, a superset of the ANSI standard which appears in Figure 7-9.

7.14.1.5.6 Alternate unit of measure description (ST)

Definition: The full text name of the alternate unit of measure identifier (for example, microvolt, millivolt, volt, pascal or millimeters of mercury) from a designated system of units.

7.14.1.5.7 Alternate unit of measure coding system (IS)

Definition: The alternate designated system of units. Refer to *User-defined table 0396 – Coding System* for suggested values.

7.14.1.6 Channel calibration parameters (CM)

```
Subcomponents:  < channel calibration sensitivity correction factor (NM)> & < channel calibration
             baseline (NM)> & < channel calibration time skew (NM)>
```

Definition: This component consists of three optional subcomponents (each a maximum of 20 characters, data type NM), separated from each other by subcomponent delimiters (&), which define corrections to

channel sensitivity, baseline, and channel time skew which may be derived from a calibration procedure. The three subcomponents are as follows:

7.14.1.6.1 Channel calibration sensitivity correction factor (NM)

Definition: Defines a correction factor for channel sensitivity which may be derived from the last calibration procedure performed. The actual channel sensitivity is the nominal channel sensitivity given in the previous component multiplied by the unitless correction factor.

7.14.1.6.2 Channel calibration baseline (NM)

Definition: Defines the actual channel baseline (the data value which corresponds to a nominal input signal of zero). The actual baseline may differ from the ideal because of a dc offset in the amplifier connected to the ADC. The actual baseline values for all channels (which need not be integers) may be determined at the time of calibration as the average digitized values obtained when a zero input signal is connected to each channel.

7.14.1.6.3 Channel calibration time skew (NM)

Definition: Defines the time difference between the nominal sampling (digitization) time (which would be the same for all channels) and the actual sampling time of the channel, in seconds (or fractions thereof). This value will differ from zero when all channels in the montage are not sampled simultaneously, as occurs in systems which sample successive channels at regular time intervals. This value may be determined from a calibration procedure in which an identical time-varying signal is applied to all channels and interchannel time differences are estimated, or more commonly it may be taken from the manufacturer's specifications for the digitizing system used. For example, for a system which samples successive channels at regular time intervals *t*, the time skew of channel number *n* would be *(n-1)t*. The actual time of sampling (digitization) of sample number *m* of channel number *n* in such a system would be $R + (m-1)/f + (n-1)t$, where *R* is the reference time at the start of the epoch and *f* is the channel sampling frequency ($t < 1/f$).

7.14.1.7 Channel sampling frequency (NM)

Definition: Defines the sampling frequency in hertz of the channel, that is, the reciprocal of the time in seconds between successive samples (maximum 20 characters, data type NM). Note that this is the frequency of transmitted data, which may or may not be the actual frequency at which the data was acquired by an analog-to-digital converter or other digital data source (i.e. the data transmitted may be subsampled, or interpolated, from the originally acquired data.)

7.14.1.8 Minimum and maximum data values (CM)

```
Subcomponents:  < minimum data value  (NM)> & <maximum data value (NM)>
```

Definition: Defines the minimum and maximum data values which can occur in this channel in the digital waveform data, that is, the range of the ADC (each maximum of 20 characters, data type NM), and also specifies whether or not nonintegral data values may occur in this channel in the waveform data. If the minimum and maximum values are both integers (or not present), only integral data values may be used in this channel. If either the minimum or the maximum value contains a decimal point, then nonintegral as well as integral data values may be used in this channel. The minimum and maximum data values are separated by a component delimiter (&).

7.14.1.8.1 Minimum data value (NM)

Definition: Defines the minimum data value that can occur in this channel in the digital waveform data, and also specifies whether or not nonintegral data values may occur in this channel in the waveform data.

For an *n*-bit signed ADC, the nominal baseline $B = 0$, and the minimum (L) and maximum (H) values may be calculated as follows:

$$L = -2^{n-1}$$

$$H = 2^{n-1} - 1$$

For an unsigned *n*-bit ADC, the minimum value $L = 0$, and the nominal baseline value (B) and maximum value (H) may be calculated from the formulas,

$$B = 2^{n-1}$$

$$H = 2^{n} - 1$$

The actual signal amplitude A (for differentially amplified potential measurements, the potential at electrode number one minus that at electrode number two) may be calculated from the value D (range L to H) in the waveform data using the actual baseline value B and the nominal sensitivity S and actual sensitivity correction factor C by the formula,

$$A = SC(D-B)$$

7.14.1.8.2 Maximum data value (NM)

Definition: Defines the maximum data value that can occur in this channel in the digital waveform data, and also specifies whether or not nonintegral data values may occur in this channel in the waveform data.

For an *n*-bit signed ADC, the nominal baseline $B = 0$, and the minimum (L) and maximum (H) values may be calculated as follows:

$$L = -2^{n-1}$$

$$H = 2^{n-1} - 1$$

For an unsigned *n*-bit ADC, the minimum value $L = 0$, and the nominal baseline value (B) and maximum value (H) may be calculated from the formulas,

$$B = 2^{n-1}$$

$$H = 2^{n} - 1$$

The actual signal amplitude A (for differentially amplified potential measurements, the potential at electrode number one minus that at electrode number two) may be calculated from the value D (range L to H) in the waveform data using the actual baseline value B and the nominal sensitivity S and actual sensitivity correction factor C by the formula,

$$A = SC(D-B)$$

7.14.2 Specific observation ID suffixes

Each waveform channel in a recording contains timing, channel definition and digital time series data. The category of waveform result transmitted in a given OBX segment is determined by the Observation ID Suffix contained in *OBX-3-observation identifier*. Four suffixes are provided for the different categories of waveform result:

Observation	Suffix	Data Type
Timing Information	TIM	TS
Channel Definition	CHN	CD
Waveform Data	WAV	NA or MA
Waveform Annotation	ANO	CE

The Observation Sub-ID is used to associate the TIM, CHN, and subsequent WAV, and ANO category result segments for a given channel or channels in a waveform response message.

7.14.2.1 Timing information (TIM)

Definition: The TIM category OBX result segment establishes the date and time of the first data point in a given Observation Sub-ID grouping of waveform channels. If there is a gap in the time sequence of waveform data, this should be indicated by the transmission of a new TIM category result segment prior to subsequent WAV category result segments with the same Observation Sub-ID. The data type is TS.

7.14.2.2 Channel definition data (CHN)

Definition: The CHN category OBX result segment defines recording channels for digitally sampled time-series waveforms. Subsequent WAV category result segments carry the actual waveform samples. Each CHN category result segment defines one or more channels; the *OBX-5-Observation Value* field may repeat to define additional channels. Each instance or repetition is formatted as a CD data type.

Each channel has a number (which generally defines its position in a multichannel display) and an optional name or label (also used in displays). One or two named waveform sources may also be associated with a channel (providing for the use of differential amplifiers with two inputs). A channel also has an associated sensitivity, calibration parameters (sensitivity correction factor, baseline, and time skew), sampling frequency, and minimum and maximum values. The sampling frequency refers to the number of samples per unit time for the data reported in the subsequent WAV category result segments.

When multiple channels are defined within a single CHN category result segment, if the channel sensitivity/units (third component), sensitivity correction factor (first subcomponent of component 4), baseline (second subcomponent), time skew (third subcomponent), sampling frequency (fifth component), minimum data value (first subcomponent of component 6), or maximum data value (second subcomponent) is not present in any repetition of the *OBX-5-observation value* field, the value given in the last repetition in which the item *was* present may used by the receiver system. This is referred to as a "sticky default." For example, if all channels have the same sensitivity, sensitivity correction factor/baseline/time skew, sampling frequency, and minimum/maximum data values, these may be specified for the first channel but omitted in all subsequent channel definitions in the same CHN category result segment, thus reducing the length of the segment. If the sensitivity correction factor, baseline, or time skew is not present in the first channel being defined, values of 1, 0, and 0 (respectively) may be used. No other default values are assumed for components which are not present.

7.14.2.3 Waveform digital data (WAV)

Definition: The WAV category OBX result segment is used to transmit the actual waveform data (the time-series digitized values from an analog-to-digital converter (ADC) or other source of sampled digital data). WAV category result segments are associated with their corresponding channel definitions (CHN category OBX result segment) via the Observation Sub-ID. The number of channels defined in the CHN category result segment specifies the number of channels of multiplexed data contained in the WAV category result segments associated with it. For example, if a CHN category result segment contains only a single channel definition, then each WAV category result segment with the same Observation Sub-ID contains only one channel of data. However, if a CHN category result segment contains three channel definitions then each WAV category result segment with the same Observation Sub-ID must contain three channels of data. A given set of waveform data for all channels and at multiple successive times may be transmitted in a single WAV category result segment (provided that the length of the observation value field does not exceed the maximum defined field length for OBX segments, 65536), or in multiple successive WAV category result segments, possibly with interspersed result segments of other types (for example, containing annotations, or comments).

The data type of the WAV category result segment can be NA (Numeric Array) or MA (Multiplexed Array). Using the NA data type, the data values are formatted in "channel-block", or "unmultiplexed" format. The digital samples for each channel are separated using component delimiters, and successive channels are separated using the repeat delimiter. Using the MA data type, the data values are formatted in "channel multiplexed" format, i.e., the values for the first time sample (all channels) are transmitted first, then the values for the second time sample (all channels) are transmitted, and so on until all samples have been transmitted. The digital samples for each channel are separated by the component delimiter, and successive samples are separated by the repeat delimiter. Channel multiplexed format can only be used if all of the multiplexed channels have the same effective sampling frequency.

7.14.2.4 Waveform annotation (ANO)

Definition: The ANO category OBX segment is used to transmit waveform annotations (coded entry associated with a given point in time during the waveform recording). The ANO category result segments are referenced to their corresponding channel definitions (CHN category OBX result segment) via the Observation Sub-ID. The number of channels defined in the CHN category result segment specifies the number of channels of annotation contained in any ANO category result segments associated with it. For example, if a CHN category result segment contains only a single channel definition, then any ANO category result segments with the same Observation Sub-ID will contain only one annotation coded entry. However, if a CHN category result segment contains three channel definitions then any ANO category result segments with the same Observation Sub-ID must contain three separate annotation coded entries.

The data type of the ANO category result segment is CE. The annotation coded entries for successive channels are separated using the repeat delimiter. Adjacent repeat delimiters are used when there is no annotation coded entry for a channel in a multichannel result segment. Refer to *User defined Table 0317 - Annotations* for suggested values.

User-defined Table 0317 - Annotations

Value	Description
9900	Pace spike
9901	SAS marker
9902	Sense marker
9903	Beat marker

Value	Description
9904	etc.

7.15 WAVEFORM – TRIGGER EVENTS & MESSAGE DEFINITIONS

Response messages containing waveform results are identified by the trigger event provided in the message header segment (MSH-09, second component of message type). Separate trigger events have been defined to differentiate the solicited and unsolicited modes of transmission.

7.15.1 W01 - waveform result, unsolicited transmission of requested information

The waveform response unsolicited trigger event identifies ORU messages used to transmit waveform data which are results of an ordered test or series of observations. The W01 trigger event may also be used to identify ORU messages sent as the eventual response to a QRY message specifying a deferred mode query for waveform results/observations with record-oriented format (similar to the deferred response display mode DSR message type described in Chapter 2). One or more ORU messages with the W01 trigger event may result from this type of QRY message.

7.15.2 W02 - waveform result, response to query

The W02 trigger event identifies QRF messages which are a response to a QRY message specifying an immediate mode query for waveform results/observations with record-oriented format.

7.16 WAVEFORM – SEGMENT DEFINITIONS

7.16.1 Combining rules for waveform OBX segments

A waveform result "battery" may contain one or more channels of digital waveform data. The Observation Sub-ID is used to logically associate the TIM, CHN and WAV category OBX segments which pertain to a given set of channels in the result "battery." Each Sub-ID group must contain at least one TIM, one CHN and one WAV category segment and at least one of the TIM category result segments must precede the first WAV category result segment in that group.

7.16.2 Restrictions on valuation of OBX segment fields

The result category for a given OBX segment determines how specific fields in that segment are valued. The following tables indicate the use of the OBX segment for waveform components. The data types, lengths, optionality, and repeat values listed do not replace the basic definition of the OBX segment in section 7.4.2.

The OPT/X column can take the values of R = Required, O = Optional, or X = Ignored and not valued. **OBX Fields marked with an X should not be valued in Waveform response messages of specified Suffix type.** Valuation of the fields must match the value provided in the associated wave category OBX segments, i.e., OBX with the same sub-ID must share the same result status.

7.16.3 OBX segment - TIM category

When using the OBX for the TIM category, *OBX-2* should be valued to TS. Consequently, *OBX-5* should have a length of 26 given the format of the TS data type. Note the expectations on which fields are required as well as the fields that should not be valued.

HL7 Attribute Table - OBX - TIM Category

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	O			00569	Set ID - OBX
2	2	ID	R		0125	00570	Value Type
3	250	CE	R			00571	Observation Identifier
4	20	ST	R			00572	Observation Sub-ID
5	26	TS	R			00573	Observation Value
6	250	CE	X			00574	Units
7	60	ST	X			00575	References Range
8	5	ID	X		0078	00576	Abnormal Flags
9	5	NM	X	Y/5		00577	Probability
10	2	ID	X		0080	00578	Nature of Abnormal Test
11	1	ID	R		0085	00579	Observation Result Status
12	26	TS	X			00580	Date Last Observation Normal Values
13	20	ST	X			00581	User Defined Access Checks
14	26	TS	X			00582	Date/Time of the Observation
15	250	CE	X			00583	Producer's ID
16	250	CN	X			00584	Responsible Observer
17	250	CE	X	Y		00936	Observation Method
18	22	EI	O	Y		01479	Equipment Instance Identifier
19	26	TS	O			01480	Date/Time of the Analysis

7.16.4 OBX segment - CHN category

When using the OBX for the CHN category, *OBX-2* should be valued to CD. Consequently, *OBX-5* could have a length of up to 65536 given the format of the CD data type. Note the expectations on which fields are required as well as the fields that should not be valued.

HL7 Attribute Table - OBX - CHN Category

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	O			00569	Set ID - OBX
2	2	ID	R		0125	00570	Value Type
3	250	CE	R			00571	Observation Identifier
4	20	ST	R			00572	Observation Sub-ID
5	65536	CD	R			00573	Observation Value
6	250	CE	X			00574	Units
7	60	ST	X			00575	References Range
8	5	ID	X		0078	00576	Abnormal Flags
9	5	NM	X	Y/5		00577	Probability
10	2	ID	X		0080	00578	Nature of Abnormal Test
11	1	ID	R		0085	00579	Observation Result Status
12	26	TS	X			00580	Date Last Observation Normal Values
13	20	ST	X			00581	User Defined Access Checks

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
14	26	TS	X			00582	Date/Time of the Observation
15	250	CE	X			00583	Producer's ID
16	250	CN	X			00584	Responsible Observer
17	250	CE	X	Y		00936	Observation Method
18	22	EI	O	Y		01479	Equipment Instance Identifier
19	26	TS	O			01480	Date/Time of the Analysis

Note: The length of the observation value field is variable, depending upon number of channels defined.

7.16.5 OBX segment - WAV category

When using the OBX for the WAV category, *OBX-2* can be valued as either NM or MA. Consequently, *OBX-5* could have a length of up to 65536 given the format of the data types. Note the expectations on which fields are required as well as the fields that should not be valued.

HL7 Attribute Table - OBX - WAV Category

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	O			00569	Set ID - OBX
2	2	ID	R		0125	00570	Value Type
3	250	CE	R			00571	Observation Identifier
4	20	ST	R			00572	Observation Sub-ID
5	65536	NA or MA	C			00573	Observation Value
6	250	CE	X			00574	Units
7	60	ST	X			00575	References Range
8	5	ID	O		0078	00576	Abnormal Flags
9	5	NM	X	Y/5		00577	Probability
10	2	ID	X		0080	00578	Nature of Abnormal Test
11	1	ID	R		0085	00579	Observation Result Status
12	26	TS	X			00580	Date Last Observation Normal Values
13	20	ST	X			00581	User Defined Access Checks
14	26	TS	X			00582	Date/Time of the Observation
15	250	CE	X			00583	Producer's ID
16	250	CN	O			00584	Responsible Observer
17	250	CE	X			00936	Observation Method
18	22	EI	O	Y		01479	Equipment Instance Identifier
19	26	TS	O			01480	Date/Time of the Analysis

Notes:

1. The length of the observation value field is variable, depending upon number of channels and number of data points sampled.
2. Fields 8, 11 and 16 apply exclusively to the set of data points in the OBX. They do not map to a particular data point or channel.

7.16.6 OBX segment – ANO category

When using the OBX for the ANO category, *OBX-2* should be valued to CE. Consequently, *OBX-5* could have a length of up the 65536 given the format of the data types. Note the expectations on which fields are required as well as the fields that should not be valued.

HL7 Attribute Table - OBX - ANO Category

SEQ	LEN	DT	OPT	RP/#	TBL#	ITEM#	ELEMENT NAME
1	4	SI	O			00569	Set ID - OBX
2	2	ID	R		0125	00570	Value Type
3	250	CE	R			00571	Observation Identifier
4	20	ST	R			00572	Observation Sub-ID
5	250	CE	C			00573	Observation Value
6	250	CE	X			00574	Units
7	60	ST	X			00575	References Range
8	5	ID	O	Y/5	0078	00576	Abnormal Flags
9	5	NM	X			00577	Probability
10	2	ID	X		0080	00578	Nature of Abnormal Test
11	1	ID	R		0085	00579	Observation Result Status
12	26	TS	X			00580	Date Last Observation Normal Values
13	20	ST	X			00581	User Defined Access Checks
14	26	TS	O			00582	Date/Time of the Observation
15	250	CE	X			00583	Producer's ID
16	250	CN	O			00584	Responsible Observer
17	250	CE	X	Y		00936	Observation Method
18	22	EI	O	Y		01479	Equipment Instance Identifier
19	26	TS	O			01480	Date/Time of the Analysis

Note: The length of the observation value field is variable, depending upon number of channels defined.

7.17 WAVEFORM – EXAMPLES OF USE

This section gives four example messages of type ORU (unsolicited) that each contain a three-channel waveform recording, with the same waveform in each channel. These examples contain data for one patient. In these example message transmissions, **<cr>** indicates an ASCII carriage return character (ASCII 13).

The following is a detailed explanation of each of the segments contained in the example messages:

Message Header (MSH) Segment - This specifies the delimiters (|^~**&**), sending application (**SVL,** meaning Sunnyville Laboratory), receiving application (**SVC**, meaning Sunnyville Clinic), date and time of transmission (March 24, 1990 at 10:12:15), message type (**ORU**) and trigger event (**W01**), a message control ID that identifies this message uniquely among all messages transmitted by this sender (**19264**), processing ID (**P**, meaning production), and specification version ID (**2.3**).

Patient ID (PID) Segment - This contains a sequence number (**1**), external and internal patient IDs (both **4567890**), and a patient name (**Mr. John Q Doe, Jr**).

Order (OBR) Segment - This contains a sequence number (**1**), placer order number (**5678**) and placer ID (**SVC**, meaning Sunnyville Clinic), filler order number (**1234**) and filler ID (**SVL**, meaning Sunnyville Laboratory), and test/observation ID (**5**, using a local coding system that is known to the intended receiver, meaning a three-channel waveform recording).

CHN Category Result (OBX) Segments - Using a value type of **CD** (channel definition), these define each of the three data channels by number and specify a label (waveform source) for each. The channel sensitivity (**0.5 mV**), sampling frequency (**200**), and minimum and maximum data values (**-2048** to **2047**) are specified for each channel

in examples 1 and 2 and 4. In example 3, these are specified only for channel 1, but apply by default to all subsequent channels. No baseline or calibration parameters are specified, so defaults are used for all channels.

TIM Category Result (OBX) Segments - Using the data type TS (time stamp), these define the start of the waveform data at a time 525 ms past 8:12:37 on March 24, 1990.

WAV Category Result (OBX) Segments - The data may be transmitted in either "channel-block" (unmultiplexed) format using the NA data type, or in "channel-multiplexed" format using the MA data type. The three examples demonstrate different ways of transmitting 3 waveform channels, with 25 samples from each waveform channel. Note that in these examples, each waveform channel is identical.

ANO Category Result (OBX) Segments - Annotation segments with a single channel definition contain a single annotation string. Annotation segments with multiple channel definitions contain a separate annotation string for each defined channel - successive annotation strings are separated from each other by the repeat delimiter. In the following examples, channel 1 has been annotated at a time 565 ms past 8:12:37 on March 24, 1990; channel 3 has been annotated at a time 605 ms past 8:12:37 on March 24, 1990.

7.17.1 Example 1: "channel-block" format, using three separate sets of TIM, CHN, WAV and category OBX segments:

```
MSH|^~\&|SVL||SVC||19900324101215||ORU^W01|...<cr>

PID|1||4567890||Doe^John^Q^Jr^Mr|...<cr>

OBR|1|5678^SVC|1234^SVL|5^three-channel waveform recording^99SVL|...<cr>

OBX|1|CD|5&CHN^^99SVL|1|1^ONE^0.5&mv^^200^-2048&2047||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|2|TS|5&TIM^^99SVL|1|19900324081237.525||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|3|NA|5&WAV^^99SVL|1|0^1^2^3^4^5^6^7^8^7^6^5^4^3^2^1^0^-1^-2^-3^-4^-5^-6^-7^-
    8||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|4|CE|5&ANO^^99SVL|1|^Channel passing through
    maxima||||||F|||19900324081237.565|...<cr>

OBX|5|CD|5&CHN^^99SVL|2|2^TWO^0.5&mv^^200^-2048&2047||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|6|TS|5&TIM^^99SVL|2|19900324081237.525||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|7|NA|5&WAV^^99SVL|2|0^1^2^3^4^5^6^7^8^7^6^5^4^3^2^1^0^-1^-2^-3^-4^-5^-6^-7^-
    8||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|8|CD|5&CHN^^99SVL|3|3^THREE^0.5&mv^^200^-2048&2047||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|9|TS|5&TIM^^99SVL|3|19900324081237.525||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|10|NA|5&WAV^^99SVL|3|0^1^2^3^4^5^6^7^8^7^6^5^4^3^2^1^0^-1^-2^-3^-4^-5^-6^-7^-
    8||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|11|CE|5&ANO^^99SVL|3|^Channel passing through
    zero||||||F|||19900324081237.605|...<cr>

...
```

7.17.2 Example 2: "channel-block" format, using a single set of TIM, CHN, WAV and category OBX segments, with multiple channels within the one WAV category result segment:

```
MSH|^~\&|SVL||SVC||19900324101215||ORU^W01|...<cr>

PID|1||4567890||Doe^John^Q^Jr^Mr|...<cr>

OBR|1|5678^SVC|1234^SVL|5^three-channel waveform recording^99SVL|...<cr>

OBX|1|CD|5&CHN^^99SVL|1|1^ONE^0.5&mv^^200^-2048&2047~2^TWO^0.5&mv^^200^-
    2048&2047~3^THREE^0.5&mv^^200^-2048&2047||||||F|...<cr>
```

```
OBX|2|TS|5&TIM^^99SVL|1|19900324081237.525||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|3|NA|5&WAV^^99SVL|1|

0^1^2^3^4^5^6^7^8^7^6^5^4^3^2^1^0^-1^-2^-3^-4^-5^-6^-7^-8~

0^1^2^3^4^5^6^7^8^7^6^5^4^3^2^1^0^-1^-2^-3^-4^-5^-6^-7^-8~

0^1^2^3^4^5^6^7^8^7^6^5^4^3^2^1^0^-1^-2^-3^-4^-5^-6^-7^-8||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|4|CE|5&ANO^^99SVL|1|^Channel passing through
    maxima||||||F|||19900324081237.565|...<cr>

OBX|5|CE|5&ANO^^99SVL|1|~~^Channel passing through
    zero||||||F|||19900324081237.605|...<cr>
```

Note: This is an illegal construct per the message construction rules from chapter 1: the repetition separator is used only if more than one occurrence is transmitted. There is only one occurrence being sent here.

```
...
```

7.17.3 Example 3: "channel-multiplexed" format, with multiple channels within the one WAV category result segment:

```
MSH|^~\&|SVL||SVC||19900324101215||ORU^W01|...<cr>

PID|1||4567890||Doe^John^Q^Jr^Mr|...<cr>

OBR|1|5678^SVC|1234^SVL|5^three-channel waveform recording^99SVL|...<cr>

OBX|1|CD|5&CHN^^99SVL|1|1^ONE^0.5&mv^^200^-2048&2047~2^TWO~3^THREE||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|2|TS|5&TIM^^99SVL|1|19900324081237.525||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|3|MA|5&WAV^^99SVL|1|0^0^0~1^1^1~2^2^2~3^3^3~4^4^4~5^5^5~6^6^6~7^7^7~8^8^8~7^7^
    7~6^6^6~5^5^5~4^4^4~3^3^3~2^2^2~1^1^1~0^0^0~-1^-1^-1~-2^-2^-2~-3^-3^-3~-4^-4^-
    4~-5^-5^-5~-6^-6^-6~-7^-7^-7~-8^-8^-8||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|4|CE|5&ANO^^99SVL|1|^Channel passing through
    maxima||||||F|||19900324081237.565|...<cr>

OBX|5|CE|5&ANO^^99SVL|1|~~^Channel passing through
    zero||||||F|||19900324081237.605|...<cr>
```

Note: This is an illegal construct per the message construction rules from chapter 1: "the repetition separator is used only if more than one occurrence is transmitted." There is only one occurrence being sent here.

```
...
```

7.17.4 Example 4: "channel-block" format, using three separate sets of TIM, CHN, WAV and category OBX segments with a break in waveform data used to pinpoint waveform annotations for channels one and three:

```
MSH|^~\&|SVL||SVC||19900324101215||ORU^W01|...<cr>

PID|1||4567890||Doe^John^Q^Jr^Mr|...<cr>

OBR|1|5678^SVC|1234^SVL|5^three-channel waveform recording^99SVL|...<cr>

OBX|1|CD|5&CHN^^99SVL|1|1^ONE^0.5&mv^^200^-2048&2047||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|2|TS|5&TIM^^99SVL|1|19900324081237.525||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|3|NA|5&WAV^^99SVL|1|0^1^2^3^4^5^6^7^8||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|4|CE|5&ANO^^99SVL|1|^Channel passing through
    maxima||||||F|||19900324081237.565|...<cr>

OBX|5|NA|5&WAV^^99SVL|1|7^6^5^4^3^2^1^0^-1^-2^-3^-4^-5^-6^-7^-8||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|6|CD|5&CHN^^99SVL|2|2^TWO^0.5&mv^^200^-2048&2047||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|7|TS|5&TIM^^99SVL|2|19900324081237.525||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|8|NA|5&WAV^^99SVL|2|0^1^2^3^4^5^6^7^8^7^6^5^4^3^2^1^0^-1^-2^-3^-4^-5^-6^-7^-
    8||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|9|CD|5&CHN^^99SVL|3|3^THREE^0.5&mv^^200^-2048&2047||||||F|...<cr>
```

```
OBX|10|TS|5&TIM^^99SVL|3|19900324081237.525||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|11|NA|5&WAV^^99SVL|3|0^1^2^3^4^5^6^7^8^7^6^5^4^3^2^1^0||||||F|...<cr>

OBX|12|CE|5&ANO^^99SVL|3|^Channel passing through
    zero||||||F|||19900324081237.605|...<cr>

OBX|13|NA|5&WAV^^99SVL|3|-1^-2^-3^-4^-5^-6^-7^-8||||||F|...<cr>

...
```

7.18 TABLES LISTINGS

7.18.1 User defined table 0396 – Coding system

Referenced in 7.1.5 Coding Schemes

User-defined Table 0396 – Coding system

Value	Description	Comment / Source	Category
99zzz or L	Local general code (where z is an alphanumeric character)	Locally defined codes for purpose of sender or receiver. Local codes can be identified by L (for backward compatibility) or 99zzz (where z is an alphanumeric character).	General code
ACR	American College of Radiology finding codes	Index for Radiological Diagnosis Revised, 3rd Edition 1986, American College of Radiology, Reston, VA.	Specific Non-Drug Code
ART	WHO Adverse Reaction Terms	WHO Collaborating Centre for International Drug Monitoring, Box 26, S-751 03, Uppsala, Sweden.	Drug code
AS4	ASTM E1238/ E1467 Universal	American Society for Testing & Materials and CPT4 (see Appendix X1 of Specification E1238 and Appendix X2 of Specification E1467).	Specific Non-Drug Code
AS4E	AS4 Neurophysiology Codes	ASTM's diagnostic codes and test result coding/grading systems for clinical neurophysiology. See ASTM Specification E1467, Appendix 2.	Specific Non-Drug Code
ATC	American Type Culture Collection	Reference cultures (microorganisms, tissue cultures, etc.), related biological materials and associated data. American Type Culture Collection, 12301 Parklawn Dr, Rockville MD, 20852. (301) 881-2600. http://www.atcc.org	Specific Non-Drug Code
C4	CPT-4	American Medical Association, P.O. Box 10946, Chicago IL 60610.	Specific Non-Drug Code
C5	CPT-5	(under development – same contact as above)	Specific Non-Drug Code
CAS	Chemical abstract codes	These include unique codes for each unique chemical, including all generic drugs. The codes do not distinguish among different dosing forms. When multiple equivalent CAS numbers exist, use the first one listed in USAN. USAN 1990 and the USP dictionary of drug names, William M. Heller, Ph.D., Executive Editor, United States Pharmacopeial Convention, Inc., 12601 Twinbrook Parkway, Rockville, MD 20852.	Drug code
CD2	CDT-2 Codes	American Dental Association's Current Dental Terminology (CDT-2) code. American Dental Association, 211 E. Chicago Avenue,. Chicago, Illinois 60611.	Specific Non-Drug Code
CDCA	CDC Analyte Codes	As above, for CDCM	

CDCM	CDC Methods/Instruments Codes	Public Health Practice Program Office, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 4770 Buford Highway, Atlanta, GA, 30421. Also available via FTP: ftp.cdc.gov/pub/laboratory_info/CLIA and Gopher: gopher.cdc.gov:70/11/laboratory_info/CLIA	Drug code
CDS	CDC Surveillance	CDC Surveillance Codes. For data unique to specific public health surveillance requirements. Epidemiology Program Office, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1600 Clifton Rd, Atlanta, GA, 30333. (404) 639-3661.	Specific Non-Drug Code
CE	CEN ECG diagnostic codes	CEN PT007. A quite comprehensive set of ECG diagnostic codes (abbreviations) and descriptions published as a pre-standard by CEN TC251. Available from CEN TC251 secretariat, c/o Georges DeMoor, State University Hospital Gent, De Pintelaan 185-5K3, 9000 Gent, Belgium or Jos Willems, University of Gathuisberg, 49 Herestraat, 3000 Leuven, Belgium.	Specific Non-Drug Code
CLP	CLIP	Simon Leeming, Beth Israel Hospital, Boston MA. Codes for radiology reports.	Specific Non-Drug Code
CPTM	CPT Modifier Code	Available from the AMA at the address listed for CPT above. These codes are found in Appendix A of CPT 2000 Standard Edition. (CPT 2000 Standard Edition, American Medical Association, Chicago, IL).	Specific Non-Drug Code
CST	COSTART	International coding system for adverse drug reactions. In the USA, maintained by the FDA, Rockville, MD.	Drug code
CVX	CDC Vaccine Codes	National Immunization Program, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1660 Clifton Road, Atlanta, GA, 30333	Drug code
DCL	DICOM Class Label	From the Message Standards Classes table of the SNOMED-DICOM-Microglossary. College of American Pathologists, Skokie, IL, 60077-1034	Specific Non-Drug Code
DCM	DICOM modality codes	Dean Bidgood, MD; Duke University Medical Center, Durham NC. Digital Imaging and Communications in Medicine (DICOM). From NEMA Publications PS-3.1 – PS 3.12: The ACR-NEMA DICOM Standard. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA). Rosslyn, VA, 22209., 1992, 1993, 1995	Specific Non-Drug Code
DQL	DICOM Query Label	HL7 Image Management Special Interest Group, Health Level Seven, Ann Arbor, MI.	Specific Non-Drug Code
E	EUCLIDES	Available from Euclides Foundation International nv, Excelsiorlaan 4A, B-1930 Zaventem, Belgium; Phone: 32 2 720 90 60.	Specific Non-Drug Code
E5	Euclides quantity codes	Available from Euclides Foundation International nv (see above)	Specific Non-Drug Code
E6	Euclides Lab method codes	Available from Euclides Foundation International nv, Excelsiorlaan 4A, B-1930 Zaventem, Belgium; Phone: 32 2 720 90 60.	Specific Non-Drug Code
E7	Euclides Lab equipment codes	Available from Euclides Foundation International nv (see above)	Specific Non-Drug Code
ENZC	Enzyme Codes	Enzyme Committee of the International Union of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology. Enzyme Nomenclature: Recommendations on the Nomenclature and Classification of Enzyme-Catalysed Reactions. London: Academic Press, 1992.	Specific Non-Drug Code
FDDC	First DataBank Drug Codes	National Drug Data File. Proprietary product of First DataBank, Inc. (800) 633-3453, or http://www.firstdatabank.com.	Drug code
FDDX	First DataBank Diagnostic Codes	Used for drug-diagnosis interaction checking. Proprietary product of First DataBank, Inc. As above for FDDC.	Drug code
FDK	FDA K10	Dept. of Health & Human Services, Food & Drug Administration, Rockville, MD 20857. (device & analyte process codes).	Specific Non-Drug Code

HB	HIBCC	Health Industry Business Communications Council, 5110 N. 40th St., Ste 120, Phoenix, AZ 85018.	Specific Non-Drug Code
HCPCS	HCFA Common Procedure Coding System	HCPCS: contains codes for medical equipment, injectable drugs, transportation services, and other services not found in CPT4.	Specific Non-Drug Code
HHC	Home Health Care	Home Health Care Classification System; Virginia Saba, EdD, RN; Georgetown University School of Nursing; Washington, DC.	Specific Non-Drug Code
HI	Health Outcomes	Health Outcomes Institute codes for outcome variables available (with responses) from Stratis Health (formerly Foundation for Health Care Evaluation and Health Outcomes Institute), 2901 Metro Drive, Suite 400, Bloomington, MN, 55425-1525; (612) 854-3306 (voice); (612) 853-8503 (fax); dziegen@winternet.com. See examples in the Implementation Guide.	Specific Non-Drug Code
HL7nnnn	HL7 Defined Codes where nnnn is the HL7 table number	Health Level Seven where nnnn is the HL7 table number	General code
HPC	HCFA Procedure Codes (HCPCS)	Health Care Financing Administration (HCFA) Common Procedure Coding System (HCPCS) including modifiers.[4]	Specific Non-Drug Code
I10	ICD-10	World Health Publications, Albany, NY.	Specific Non-Drug Code
I10P	ICD-10 Procedure Codes	Procedure Coding System (ICD-10-PCS.) See http://www/hcfa.gov/stats/icd10.icd10.htm for more information.	Specific Non-Drug Code
I9	ICD9	World Health Publications, Albany, NY.	Specific Non-Drug Code
I9C	ICD-9CM	Commission on Professional and Hospital Activities, 1968 Green Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48105 (includes all procedures and diagnostic tests).	Specific Non-Drug Code
IBT	ISBT	International Society of Blood Transfusion. Blood Group Terminology 1990. VOX Sanquines 1990 58(2):152-169.	Specific Non-Drug Code
IC2	ICHPPC-2	International Classification of Health Problems in Primary Care, Classification Committee of World Organization of National Colleges, Academies and Academic Associations of General Practitioners (WONCA), 3rd edition. An adaptation of ICD9 intended for use in General Medicine, Oxford University Press.	Specific Non-Drug Code

[4] The HCPCS code is divided into three "levels." Level I includes the entire CPT-4 code by reference. Level II includes the American Dental Association's Current Dental Terminology (CDT-2) code by reference. Level II also includes the genuine HCPCS codes, approved and maintained jointly by the Alpha-Numeric Editorial Panel, consisting of HCFA, the Health Insurance Association of America, and the Blue Cross and Blue Shield Association. Level III are codes developed locally by Medicare carriers. The HCPCS modifiers are divided into the same three levels, I being CPT-4 modifiers, II CDT-2 and genuine HCPCS modifiers, and III being locally agreed modifiers.

The genuine HCPCS codes and modifiers of level II can be found at http://www.hcfa.gov/stats/anhcpcdl.htm. HCFA distributes the HCPCS codes via the National Technical Information Service (NTIS, www.ntis.gov) and NTIS distribution includes the CDT-2 part of HCPCS Level II, but does not include the CPT-4 part (Level I). HCFA may distribute the CPT-4 part to its contractors.

ICDO	International Classification of Diseases for Oncology	International Classification of Diseases for Oncology, 2nd Edition. World Health Organization: Geneva, Switzerland, 1990. Order from: College of American Pathologists, 325 Waukegan Road, Northfield, IL, 60093-2750. (847) 446-8800.	Specific Non-Drug Code
ICS	ICCS	Commission on Professional and Hospital Activities, 1968 Green Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48105.	Specific Non-Drug Code
ICSD	International Classification of Sleep Disorders	International Classification of Sleep Disorders Diagnostic and Coding Manual, 1990, available from American Sleep Disorders Association, 604 Second Street SW, Rochester, MN 55902	Specific Non-Drug Code
ISOnnnn	ISO Defined Codes where nnnn is the ISO table number	International Standards Organization where nnnn is the ISO table number	General code
IUPP	IUPAC/IFCC Property Codes	International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry/International Federation of Clinical Chemistry. The Silver Book: Compendium of terminology and nomenclature of properties in clinical laboratory sciences. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific Publishers, 1995. Henrik Olesen, M.D., D.M.Sc., Chairperson, Department of Clinical Chemistry, KK76.4.2, Rigshospitalet, University Hospital of Copenhagen, DK-2200, Copenhagen. http://inet.uni-c.dk/~qukb7642/	Specific Non-Drug Code
IUPC	IUPAC/IFCC Component Codes	Codes used by IUPAC/IFF to identify the component (analyte) measured. Contact Henrik Olesen, as above for IUPP.	Specific Non-Drug Code
JC8	Japanese Chemistry	Clinical examination classification code. Japan Association of Clinical Pathology. Version 8, 1990. A multiaxial code including a subject code (e.g., Rubella = 5f395, identification code (e.g., virus ab IGG), a specimen code (e.g., serum =023) and a method code (e.g., ELISA = 022)	Specific Non-Drug Code
LB	Local billing code	Local billing codes/names (with extensions if needed).	General code
LN	Logical Observation Identifier Names and Codes (LOINC®)	Regenstrief Institute, c/o LOINC, 1050 Wishard Blvd., 5th floor, Indianapolis, IN 46202. 317/630-7433. Available from the Regenstrief Institute server at http://www.regenstrief.org/loinc/loinc.htm. January 2000 version has identifiers, synonyms and cross-reference codes for reporting over 26,000 laboratory and related observations and 1,500 clinical measures.	Specific Non-Drug Code
MCD	Medicaid	Medicaid billing codes/names.	Specific Non-Drug Code
MCR	Medicare	Medicare billing codes/names.	Specific Non-Drug Code
MDDX	Medispan Diagnostic Codes	Codes Used for drug-diagnosis interaction checking. Proprietary product. Hierarchical drug codes for identifying drugs down to manufacturer and pill size. MediSpan, Inc., 8425 Woodfield Crossing Boulevard, Indianapolis, IN 46240. Tel: (800) 428-4495. WWW: http://www.espan.com/medispan/pages/ medhome.html. As above for MGPI.	Drug code
MEDC	Medical Economics Drug Codes	Proprietary Codes for identifying drugs. Proprietary product of Medical Economics Data, Inc. (800) 223-0581.	Drug code
MEDR	Medical Dictionary for Drug Regulatory Affairs (MEDDRA)	Dr. Louise Wood, Medicines Control Agency, Market Towers, 1 Nine Elms Lane, London SW85NQ, UK Tel: (44)0 171-273-0000 WWW: http://www.open.gov.uk/mca/mcahome.htm	Drug code
MEDX	Medical Economics Diagnostic Codes	Used for drug-diagnosis interaction checking. Proprietary product of Medical Economics Data, Inc. (800) 223-0581.	Drug code

MGPI	Medispan GPI	Medispan hierarchical drug codes for identifying drugs down to manufacturer and pill size. Proprietary product of MediSpan, Inc., 8425 Woodfield Crossing Boulevard, Indianapolis, IN 46240. Tel: (800) 428-4495.	Drug code
MVX	CDC Vaccine Manufacturer Codes	As above, for CVX	Drug code
NDA	NANDA	North American Nursing Diagnosis Association, Philadelphia, PA.	Specific Non-Drug Code
NDC	National drug codes	These provide unique codes for each distinct drug, dosing form, manufacturer, and packaging. (Available from the National Drug Code Directory, FDA, Rockville, MD, and other sources.)	Drug code
NIC	Nursing Interventions Classification	Iowa Intervention Project, College of Nursing, University of Iowa, Iowa City, Iowa	Specific Non-Drug Code
NPI	National Provider Identifier	Health Care Finance Administration, US Dep't. of Health and Human Services, 7500 Security Blvd., Baltimore, MD 21244.	Specific Non-Drug Code
OHA	Omaha System	Omaha Visiting Nurse Association, Omaha, NB.	Specific Non-Drug Code
OHA	Omaha	Omaha Visiting Nurse Association, Omaha, NB.	Specific Non-Drug Code
POS	POS Codes	HCFA Place of Service Codes for Professional Claims (see http://www.hcfa.gov/medicare/poscode.htm).	Specific Non-Drug Code
RC	Read Classification	The Read Clinical Classification of Medicine, Park View Surgery, 26 Leicester Rd., Loughborough LE11 2AG (includes drug procedure and other codes, as well as diagnostic codes).	Specific Non-Drug Code
SDM	SNOMED- DICOM Microglossary	College of American Pathologists, Skokie, IL, 60077-1034. (formerly designated as 99SDM).	Specific Non-Drug Code
SNM	Systemized Nomenclature of Medicine (SNOMED)	Systemized Nomenclature of Medicine, 2nd Edition 1984 Vols 1, 2, College of American Pathologists, Skokie, IL.	Specific Non-Drug Code
SNM3	SNOMED International	SNOMED International, 1993 Vols 1-4, College of American Pathologists, Skokie, IL, 60077-1034..	Specific Non-Drug Code
SNT	SNOMED topology codes (anatomic sites)	College of American Pathologists, 5202 Old Orchard Road, Skokie, IL 60077-1034.	Specific Non-Drug Code
UC	UCDS	Uniform Clinical Data Systems. Ms. Michael McMullan, Office of Peer Review Health Care Finance Administration, The Meadows East Bldg., 6325 Security Blvd., Baltimore, MD 21207; (301) 966 6851.	Specific Non-Drug Code
UMD	MDNS	Universal Medical Device Nomenclature System. ECRI, 5200 Butler Pike, Plymouth Meeting, PA 19462 USA. Phone: 215-825-6000, Fax: 215-834-1275.	Device code
UML	Unified Medical Language	National Library of Medicine, 8600 Rockville Pike, Bethesda, MD 20894.	Specific Non-Drug Code
UPC	Universal Product Code	The Uniform Code Council. 8163 Old Yankee Road, Suite J, Dayton, OH 45458; (513) 435 3070	Specific Non-Drug Code
UPIN	UPIN	Medicare/HCFA's universal physician identification numbers, available from Health Care Financing Administration, U.S. Dept. of Health and Human Services, Bureau of Program Operations, 6325 Security Blvd., Meadows East Bldg., Room 300, Baltimore, MD 21207	Specific Non-Drug Code

W1	WHO rec# drug codes	World Health organization record number code. A unique sequential number is assigned to each unique single component drug and to each multi-component drug. Eight digits are allotted to each such code, six to identify the active agent, and 2 to identify the salt, of single content drugs. Six digits are assigned to each unique combination of drugs in a dispensing unit. The six digit code is identified by W1, the 8 digit code by W2.	Drug code
W2	WHO rec# drug codes	World Health organization record number code. A unique sequential number is assigned to each unique single component drug and to each multi-component drug. Eight digits are allotted to each such code, six to identify the active agent, and 2 to identify the salt, of single content drugs. Six digits are assigned to each unique combination of drugs in a dispensing unit. The six digit code is identified by W1, the 8 digit code by W2.	Drug code
W4	WHO rec# code with ASTM extension	With ASTM extensions (see Implementation Guide), the WHO codes can be used to report serum (and other) levels, patient compliance with drug usage instructions, average daily doses and more (see Appendix X1 the Implementation Guide).	Drug code
WC	WHO ATC	WHO's ATC codes provide a hierarchical classification of drugs by therapeutic class. They are linked to the record number codes listed above.	Drug code

7.18.2 HL7 Table 0163 – Body site

Referenced in 7.3.1.15 Coding Schemes

HL7 Table 0163 - Body site

Value	Description
BE	Bilateral Ears
OU	Bilateral Eyes
BN	Bilateral Nares
BU	Buttock
CT	Chest Tube
LA	Left Arm
LAC	Left Anterior Chest
LACF	Left Antecubital Fossa
LD	Left Deltoid
LE	Left Ear
LEJ	Left External Jugular
OS	Left Eye
LF	Left Foot
LG	Left Gluteus Medius
LH	Left Hand
LIJ	Left Internal Jugular
LLAQ	Left Lower Abd Quadrant

Value	Description
LLFA	Left Lower Forearm
LMFA	Left Mid Forearm
LN	Left Naris
LPC	Left Posterior Chest
LSC	Left Subclavian
LT	Left Thigh
LUA	Left Upper Arm
LUAQ	Left Upper Abd Quadrant
LUFA	Left Upper Forearm
LVG	Left Ventragluteal
LVL	Left Vastus Lateralis
NB	Nebulized
PA	Perianal
PERIN	Perineal
RA	Right Arm
RAC	Right Anterior Chest
RACF	Right Antecubital Fossa
RD	Right Deltoid
RE	Right Ear
REJ	Right External Jugular
OD	Right Eye
RF	Right Foot
RG	Right Gluteus Medius
RH	Right Hand
RIJ	Right Internal Jugular
RLAQ	Rt Lower Abd Quadrant
RLFA	Right Lower Forearm
RMFA	Right Mid Forearm
RN	Right Naris
RPC	Right Posterior Chest
RSC	Right Subclavian
RT	Right Thigh
RUA	Right Upper Arm
RUAQ	Right Upper Abd Quadrant
RUFA	Right Upper Forearm
RVL	Right Vastus Lateralis

Value	Description
RVG	Right Ventragluteal

7.18.3 HL7 Table 0070 – Specimen source codes

Referenced in 7.3.1.15 Coding Schemes

HL7 Table 0070 - Specimen source codes

Value	Description
ABS	Abscess
AMN	Amniotic fluid
ASP	Aspirate
BPH	Basophils
BIFL	Bile fluid
BLDA	Blood arterial
BBL	Blood bag
BLDC	Blood capillary
BPU	Blood product unit
BLDV	Blood venous
BON	Bone
BRTH	Breath (use EXHLD)
BRO	Bronchial
BRN	Burn
CALC	Calculus (=Stone)
CDM	Cardiac muscle
CNL	Cannula
CTP	Catheter tip
CSF	Cerebral spinal fluid
CVM	Cervical mucus
CVX	Cervix
COL	Colostrum
BLDCO	Cord blood
CNJT	Conjunctiva
CUR	Curettage
CYST	Cyst
DIAF	Dialysis fluid
DOSE	Dose med or substance
DRN	Drain

Value	Description
DUFL	Duodenal fluid
EAR	Ear
EARW	Ear wax (cerumen)
ELT	Electrode
ENDC	Endocardium
ENDM	Endometrium
EOS	Eosinophils
RBC	Erythrocytes
EYE	Eye
EXG	Exhaled gas (=breath)
FIB	Fibroblasts
FLT	Filter
FIST	Fistula
FLU	Body fluid, unsp
GAS	Gas
GAST	Gastric fluid/contents
GEN	Genital
GENC	Genital cervix
GENL	Genital lochia
GENV	Genital vaginal
HAR	Hair
IHG	Inhaled Gas
IT	Intubation tube
ISLT	Isolate
LAM	Lamella
WBC	Leukocytes
LN	Line
LNA	Line arterial
LNV	Line venous
LIQ	Liquid NOS
LYM	Lymphocytes
MAC	Macrophages
MAR	Marrow
MEC	Meconium
MBLD	Menstrual blood
MLK	Milk

Value	Description
MILK	Breast milk
NAIL	Nail
NOS	Nose (nasal passage)
ORH	Other
PAFL	Pancreatic fluid
PAT	Patient
PRT	Peritoneal fluid /ascites
PLC	Placenta
PLAS	Plasma
PLB	Plasma bag
PLR	Pleural fluid (thoracentesis fld)
PMN	Polymorphonuclear neutrophils
PPP	Platelet poor plasma
PRP	Platelet rich plasma
PUS	Pus
RT	Route of medicine
SAL	Saliva
SMN	Seminal fluid
SER	Serum
SKN	Skin
SKM	Skeletal muscle
SPRM	Spermatozoa
SPT	Sputum
SPTC	Sputum - coughed
SPTT	Sputum - tracheal aspirate
STON	Stone (use CALC)
STL	Stool = Fecal
SWT	Sweat
SNV	Synovial fluid (Joint fluid)
TEAR	Tears
THRT	Throat
THRB	Thrombocyte (platelet)
TISS	Tissue
TISG	Tissue gall bladder
TLGI	Tissue large intestine
TLNG	Tissue lung

Value	Description
TISPL	Tissue placenta
TSMI	Tissue small intestine
TISU	Tissue ulcer
TUB	Tube NOS
ULC	Ulcer
UMB	Umbilical blood
UMED	Unknown medicine
URTH	Urethra
UR	Urine
URC	Urine clean catch
URT	Urine catheter
URNS	Urine sediment
USUB	Unknown substance
VITF	Vitreous Fluid
VOM	Vomitus
BLD	Whole blood
BDY	Whole body
WAT	Water
WICK	Wick
WND	Wound
WNDA	Wound abscess
WNDE	Wound exudate
WNDD	Wound drainage
XXX	To be specified in another part of the message

7.18.4 Figure 7-9 – Common ISO derived units & ISO+ extensions

Referenced in 7.3.2.6.2 - ISO and ANSI customary units abbreviations

Figure 7-9. Common ISO derived units and ISO+ extensions

Code/Abbr.	Name
/(arb_u)	*1 / arbitrary unit
/iu	*1 / international unit
/kg	*1 / kilogram
/L	1 / liter
1/mL	*1 / milliliter
10.L/min	*10 x liter / minute

Code/Abbr.	Name
10.L /(min.m2)	*10 x (liter / minute) / meter^2 = liter / (minute × meter^2)
10*3/mm3	*10^3 / cubic millimeter (e.g., white blood cell count)
10*3/L	*10^3 / Liter
10*3/mL	*10^3 / milliliter
10*6/mm3	*10^6 / millimeter^3
10*6/L	*10^6 / Liter
10*6/mL	*10^6 / milliliter
10*9/mm3	*10^9 / millimeter^3
10*9/L	*10^9 / Liter
10*9/mL	*10^9 / milliliter
10*12/L	*10^{12} / Liter
10*3(rbc)	*1000 red blood cells†
a/m	Ampere per meter
(arb_u)	*Arbitrary unit
bar	Bar (pressure; 1 bar = 100 kilopascals)
/min	Beats or Other Events Per Minute
bq	Becquerel
(bdsk_u)	*Bodansky Units
(bsa)	*Body surface area
(cal)	*Calorie
1	*Catalytic Fraction
/L	Cells / Liter
cm	Centimeter
cm_h20	* Centimeters of water =H_20 (pressure)
cm_h20.s/L	Centimeters H_20 / (liter / second) = (centimeters H_20 × second) / liter (e.g., mean pulmonary resistance)
cm_h20/(s.m)	(Centimeters H_20 / second) / meter = centimeters H_20 / (second × meter) (e.g., pulmonary pressure time product)
(cfu)	*Colony Forming Units
m3/s	Cubic meter per second
d	Day
db	Decibels
dba	*Decibels a Scale
cel	Degrees Celsius
deg	Degrees of Angle

Code/Abbr.	Name
(drop)	Drop
10.un.s/cm5	Dyne × Second / centimeter^5 (1 dyne = 10 micronewton = 10 un) (e.g., systemic vascular resistance)
10.un.s/(cm5.m2)	((Dyne × second) / centimeter^5) / meter^2 = (Dyne × second) / (centimeter^5 × meter^2) (1 dyne = 10 micronewton = 10 un) (e.g., systemic vascular resistance/body surface area)
ev	Electron volts (1 electron volt = 160.217 zeptojoules)
eq	Equivalent
f	Farad (capacitance)
fg	Femtogram
fL	Femtoliter
fmol	Femtomole
/mL	*Fibers / milliliter
g	Gram
g/d	*Gram / Day
g/dL	Gram / Deciliter
g/hr	Gram / Hour
g/(8.hr)	*Gram / 8 Hour Shift
g/kg	Gram / Kilogram (e.g., mass dose of medication per body weight)
g/(kg.d)	(Gram / Kilogram) / Day = gram / (kilogram × day) (e.g., mass dose of medication per body weight per day)
g/(kg.hr)	(Gram / Kilogram) / Hour = gram / (kilogram × hour) (e.g., mass dose of medication per body weight per hour)
g/(8.kg.hr)	(Gram / Kilogram) /8 Hour Shift = gram / (kilogram × 8 hour shift) (e.g., mass dose of medication per body weight per 8 hour shift)
g/(kg.min)	(Gram / Kilogram) / Minute = gram / (kilogram × minute) (e.g., mass dose of medication per body weight per minute)
g/L	Gram / Liter
g/m2	Gram / Meter^2 (e.g., mass does of medication per body surface area)
g/min	Gram / Minute
g.m/(hb)	Gram × meter / heart beat (e.g., ventricular stroke work)
g.m/((hb).m2)	(Gram × meter/ heartbeat) / meter^2 = (gram × meter) / (heartbeat × meter^2) (e.g., ventricular stroke work/body surface area, ventricular stroke work index)
g(creat)	*Gram creatinine
g(hgb)	*Gram hemoglobin
g.m	Gram meter
g(tot_nit)	*Gram total nitrogen
g(tot_prot)	*Gram total protein

Code/Abbr.	Name
g(wet_tis)	*Gram wet weight tissue
gy	Grey (absorbed radiation dose)
hL	Hectaliter = 10^2 liter
h	Henry
in	Inches
in_hg	Inches of Mercury (=Hg)
iu	*International Unit
iu/d	*International Unit / Day
iu/hr	*International Unit / Hour
iu/kg	International Unit / Kilogram
iu/L	*International Unit / Liter
iu/mL	*International Unit / Milliliter
iu/min	*International Unit / Minute
j/L	Joule/liter (e.g., work of breathing)
kat	*Katal
kat/kg	*Katal / Kilogram
kat/L	*Katal / Liter
k/watt	Kelvin per watt
(kcal)	Kilocalorie (1 kcal = 6.693 kilojoule)
(kcal)/d	*Kilocalorie / Day
(kcal)/hr	*Kilocalorie / Hour
(kcal)/(8.hr)	*Kilocalorie / 8 Hours Shift
kg	Kilogram
kg(body_wt)	* kilogram body weight
kg/m3	Kilogram per cubic meter
kh/h	Kilogram per hour
kg/L	Kilogram / liter
kg/min	Kilogram per minute
kg/mol	Kilogram / mole
kg/s	Kilogram / second
kg/(s.m2)	(Kilogram / second)/ $meter^2$ = kilogram / (second × $meter^2$)
kg/ms	Kilogram per square meter
kg.m/s	Kilogram meter per second
kpa	Kilopascal (1 mmHg = 0.1333 kilopascals)
ks	Kilosecond

Code/Abbr.	Name
(ka_u)	King-Armstrong Unit
(knk_u)	*Kunkel Units
L	Liter
L/d	*Liter / Day
L/hr	Liter / hour
L/(8.hr)	*Liter / 8 hour shift
L/kg	Liter / kilogram
L/min	Liter / minute
L/(min.m2)	(Liter / minute) / meter^2 = liter / (minute × meter^2) (e.g., cardiac output/body surface area = cardiac index)
L/s	Liter / second (e.g., peak expiratory flow)
L.s	Liter / second / second^2 = liter × second
lm	Lumen
lm/m2	Lumen / Meter^2
(mclg_u)	*MacLagan Units
mas	Megasecond
m	Meter
m2	Meter^2 (e.g., body surface area)
m/s	Meter / Second
m/s2	Meter / Second^2
ueq	*Microequivalents
ug	Microgram
ug/d	Microgram / Day
ug/dL	Microgram / Deciliter
ug/g	Microgram / Gram
ug/hr	*Microgram / Hour
ug(8hr)	Microgram / 8 Hour Shift
ug/kg	Microgram / Kilogram
ug/(kg.d)	(Microgram / Kilogram) /Day = microgram / (kilogram × day) (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight per day)
ug/(kg.hr)	(Microgram / Kilogram) / Hour = microgram / (kilogram × hours) (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight per hour)
ug/(8.hr.kg)	(Microgram / Kilogram) / 8 hour shift = microgram / (kilogram × 8 hour shift) (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight per 8 hour shift)

Code/Abbr.	Name
ug/(kg.min)	(Microgram / Kilogram) / Minute = microgram / (kilogram × minute) (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight per minute)
ug/L	Microgram / Liter
ug/m2	Microgram / Meter^2 (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body surface area)
ug/min	Microgram / Minute
uiu	*Micro international unit
ukat	*Microkatel
um	Micrometer (Micron)
umol	Micromole
umol/d	Micromole / Day
umol/L	Micromole / Liter
umol/min	Micromole / Minute
us	Microsecond
uv	Microvolt
mbar	Millibar (1 millibar = 100 pascals)
mbar.s/L	Millibar / (liter / second) =(millibar × second) / liter (e.g., expiratory resistance)
meq	*Milliequivalent
meq/d	*Milliequivalent / Day
meq/hr	*Milliequivalent / Hour
meq/(8.hr)	Milliequivalent / 8 Hour Shift
meq/kg	Milliequivalent / Kilogram (e.g., dose of medication in milliequivalents per patient body weight)
meq/(kg.d)	(Milliequivalents / Kilogram) / Day = milliequivalents / (kilogram × day) (e.g., dose of medication in milliequivalents per patient body weight per day)
meq/(kg.hr)	(Milliequivalents / Kilogram) / Hour = milliequivalents / (kilogram × hour) (e.g., dose of medication in milliequivalents per patient body weight per hour)
meq/(8.hr.kg)	(Milliequivalents / Kilogram) / 8 Hour Shift = milliequivalents / (kilogram × 8 hour shift) (e.g., dose of medication in milliequivalents per patient body weight per 8 hour shift)
meq/(kg.min)	(Milliequivalents / Kilogram) / Minute = milliequivalents / (kilogram × minute) (e.g., dose of medication in milliequivalents per patient body weight per minute)
meq/L	Milliequivalent / Liter
	Milliequivalent / Meter^2 (e.g., dose of medication in milliequivalents per patient body surface area)
meq/min	Milliequivalent / Minute
mg	Milligram
mg/m3	Milligram / Meter^3

Code/Abbr.	Name
mg/d	Milligram / Day
mg/dL	Milligram / Deciliter
mg/hr	Milligram / Hour
mg/(8.hr)	Milligram / 8 Hour shift
mg/kg	Milligram / Kilogram
mg/(kg.d)	(Milligram / Kilogram) / Day = milligram / (kilogram × day) (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight per day)
mg/(kg.hr)	(Milligram / Kilogram) / Hour = milligram/ (kilogram × hour) (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight per hour)
mg/(8.hr.kg)	(Milligram / Kilogram) /8 Hour Shift = milligram / (kilogram × 8 hour shift) (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight per 8 hour shift)
mg/(kg.min)	(Milligram / Kilogram) / Minute = milligram / (kilogram × minute) (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight per hour)
mg/L	Milligram / Liter
mg/m2	Milligram / $Meter^2$ (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body surface area)
mg/min	Milligram / Minute
mL	Milliliter
mL/cm_h20	Milliliter / Centimeters of Water (H_20) (e.g., dynamic lung compliance)
mL/d	*Milliliter / Day
mL/(hb)	Milliliter / Heart Beat (e.g., stroke volume)
mL/((hb).m2)	(Milliliter / Heart Beat) / $Meter^2$ = Milliliter / (Heart Beat × $Meter^2$) (e.g., ventricular stroke volume index)
mL/hr	*Milliliter / Hour
mL/(8.hr)	*Milliliter / 8 Hour Shift
mL/kg	Milliliter / Kilogram (e.g., volume dose of medication or treatment per patient body weight)
mL/(kg.d)	(Milliliter / Kilogram) / Day = milliliter / (kilogram × day) (e.g., volume dose of medication or treatment per patient body weight per day)
mL/(kg.hr)	(Milliliter / Kilogram) / Hour = milliliter / (kilogram × hour) (e.g., volume dose of medication or treatment per patient body weight per hour)
mL/(8.hr.kg)	(Milliliter / Kilogram) / 8 Hour Shift = milliliter / (kilogram × 8 hour shift) (e.g., volume dose of medication or treatment per body weight per 8 hour shift)
mL/(kg.min)	(Milliliter / Kilogram) / Minute = milliliter / (kilogram × minute) (e.g., volume dose of medication or treatment per patient body weight per minute)
mL/m2	Milliliter / $Meter^2$ (e.g., volume of medication or other treatment per patient body surface area)
mL/mbar	Milliliter / Millibar (e.g., dynamic lung compliance)
mL/min	Milliliter / Minute

Code/Abbr.	Name
mL/(min.m2)	(Milliliter / Minute) / Meter^2 = milliliter / (minute × meter^2) (e.g., milliliters of prescribed infusion per body surface area; oxygen consumption index)
mL/s	Milliliter / Second
mm	Millimeter
mm(hg)	*Millimeter (HG) (1 mm Hg = 133.322 kilopascals)
mm/hr	Millimeter/ Hour
mmol/kg	Millimole / Kilogram (e.g., molar dose of medication per patient body weight)
mmol/(kg.d)	(Millimole / Kilogram) / Day = millimole / (kilogram × day) (e.g., molar dose of medication per patient body weight per day)
mmol/(kg.hr)	(Millimole / Kilogram) / Hour = millimole / (kilogram × hour) (e.g., molar dose of medication per patient body weight per hour)
mmol/(8.hr.kg)	(Millimole / Kilogram) / 8 Hour Shift = millimole / (kilogram × 8 hour shift) (e.g., molar dose of medication per patient body weight per 8 hour shift)
mmol/(kg.min)	(Millimole / Kilogram) / Minute = millimole / (kilogram × minute) (e.g., molar dose of medication per patient body weight per minute)
mmol/L	Millimole / Liter
mmol/hr	Millimole / Hour
mmol/(8hr)	Millimole / 8 Hour Shift
mmol/min	Millimole / Minute
mmol/m2	Millimole / Meter^2 (e.g., molar dose of medication per patient body surface area)
mosm/L	*Milliosmole / Liter
ms	Milliseconds
mv	Millivolts
miu/mL	*Milliunit / Milliliter
mol/m3	Mole per cubic meter
mol/kg	Mole / Kilogram
mol/(kg.s)	(Mole / Kilogram) / Second = mole / (kilogram × second)
mol/L	Mole / Liter
mol/s	Mole / Second
ng	Nanogram
ng/d	Nanogram / Day
ng/hr	*Nanogram / Hour
ng/(8.hr)	Nanogram / 8 Hour shift
ng/L	Nanogram / Liter
ng/kg	Nanogram / Kilogram (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight)
ng/(kg.d)	(Nanogram / Kilogram) / Day = nanogram / (kilogram × day) (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight per day)

Code/Abbr.	Name
ng/(kg.hr)	(Nanogram / Kilogram) / Hour = nanogram / (kilogram × hour) (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight per hour)
ng/(8.hr.kg)	(Nanogram / Kilogram) / 8 Hour Shift = nanogram / (kilogram × 8 hour shift) (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight per 8 hour shift)
ng/(kg.min)	(Nanogram / Kilogram) / Minute = nanogram / (kilogram × minute) (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body weight per minute)
ng/m2	Nanogram / Meter^2 (e.g., mass dose of medication per patient body surface area)
ng/mL	Nanogram / Milliliter
ng/min	*Nanogram / Minute
ng/s	*Nanogram / Second
nkat	*Nanokatel
nm	Nanometer
nmol/s	Nanomole / Second
ns	Nanosecond
n	Newton (force)
n.s	Newton second
(od)	*O.D. (optical density)
ohm	Ohm (electrical resistance)
ohm.m	Ohm meter
osmol	Osmole
osmol/kg	Osmole per kilogram
osmol/L	Osmole per liter
/m3	*Particles / Meter^3
/L	*Particles / Liter
/(tot)	*Particles / Total Count
(ppb)	*Parts Per Billion
(ppm)	*Parts Per Million
(ppth)	Parts per thousand
(ppt)	Parts per trillion (10^12)
pal	Pascal (pressure)
/(hpf)	*Per High Power Field
(ph)	*pH
pa	Picoampere
pg	Picogram
pg/L	Picogram / Liter
pg/mL	Picogram / Milliliter

Code/Abbr.	Name
pkat	*Picokatel
pm	Picometer
pmol	*Picomole
ps	Picosecond
pt	Picotesla
(pu)	*P.U.
%	Percent
dm2/s2	Rem (roentgen equivalent man) = 10^{-2} $meter^2$ / $second^2$ = $decimeter^2$ / $second^2$ Dose of ionizing radiation equivalent to 1 rad of x-ray or gamma ray) [From Dorland's Medical Dictionary]
sec	Seconds of arc
sie	Siemens (electrical conductance)
sv	Sievert
m2/s	Square meter / second
cm2/s	Square centimeter / second
t	Tesla (magnetic flux density)
(td_u)	Todd Unit
v	Volt (electric potential difference)
1	Volume Fraction
wb	Weber (magnetic flux)
*Starred items are not genuine ISO, but do not conflict. †This approach to units is discouraged by IUPAC. We leave them solely for backward compatibility	

7.19 OUTSTANDING ISSUES

None.